ARTÍCULOS DE INVESTIGACIÓN

The necessary and sufficient condition for the solvability of the Diophantine matrix equation $A^{mx} + A^{my} + A^{nz} = A^{nw}$
A. Grylczuk and I. Kurzydło ............ 109

Reproducing kernels of weighted poly-Bergman spaces on the upper half plane II
J. Ramírez Ortega ...................... 117

An optimal control problem on the Lie group $SE(2, \mathbb{R}) \times SO(2)$
A. Aron, C. Pop, and M. Puta ....... 129

A trigonometric-hyperbolic functional equation and its application
J. Y. Chung ......................... 141

Orthogonal polynomials on rays: Christoffel's formula
A. E. Choque Rivero and
S. M. Zagorodnyuk .................... 149

Rotundity and connectedness in two dimensions
F. J. García-Pacheco ................... 165

The spectral mapping formula in Arens-Michael-Fréchet algebras
A. Velázquez González .............. 175

Random solution of nonlinear random multivalued operator inclusion
I. Beg and M. Abbas ................. 179

Continúa/Continued on back cover
THE NECESSARY AND SUFFICIENT CONDITION FOR THE SOLVABILITY OF THE DIOPHANTINE MATRIX EQUATION

\[ A^{mx} + A^{my} + A^{mz} = A^{mw} \]

ALEKSANDER GRYTCZUK AND IZABELA KURZYDŁO

Abstract. Let \( A \) be an integral \( 2 \times 2 \) matrix. The equation

\[ A^{mx} + A^{my} + A^{mz} = A^{mw} \]

has a solution in positive integers \( x, y, z, w, \) and \( m \) distinct, if and only if the matrix \( A \) is nilpotent or \((\det A = 0 \text{ and } \text{Tr} A = -1)\) or

\((\det A = 1 \text{ and } \text{Tr} A = 0)\) or \((\det A = 1 \text{ and } \text{Tr} A = -2)\) or \( \det A = \text{Tr} A = 1. \)

1. Introduction

We give necessary and sufficient conditions for the solvability of the matrix equation

\[ A^{mx} + A^{my} + A^{mz} = A^{mw} \]

in positive, distinct integers \( x, y, z, w, \) and \( m > 2. \) The result is an extension of earlier results contained in the papers [5], [9], [11], [12].

D. Frejman in [5] and A. Grytczuk in [9] independently proved that if

\[ A = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \]

then the equation

\[ A^{mx} + A^{my} = A^{mz}, \]

where \( x, y, z, m \in N \) and \( m > 2 \) has no solution. In [11] Le and Li proved that if \( A = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \) is an integral \( 2 \times 2 \) matrix, \( a + d > 0 \) and \( bc > ad, \) then the equation (1.2) is not satisfied in natural numbers \( x, y, z, \) and \( m > 2. \) They posed also the conjecture that the equation (1.2), where \( A \) is an integral \( 2 \times 2 \) matrix , has solutions in positive integers \( x, y, z, \) and \( m > 2 \) if and only if the matrix \( A \) is a nilpotent matrix. In [12] they proved a corrected version of this conjecture: if \( A \) is an integral \( 2 \times 2 \) matrix, then (1.2) is satisfied in positive integers \( x, y, z, \) and \( m > 2 \) if and only if \( A \) is a nilpotent matrix or \( \text{Tr} A = \det A = 1. \) Another proof of this result gave A. Grytczuk in [8]. In [7] A. Grytczuk and J. Grytczuk found necessary and sufficient conditions for \( A \in M_n(Z), \) \( n \geq 2 \) to satisfy the equation \( A^x + A^y = A^z \) for some positive integers \( x, y, z. \)

We note that for \( X = A^x, Y = A^y, Z = A^z, \) we obtain from (1.2) the Fermat’s equation

\[ X^m + Y^m = Z^m. \]

In 1966 R. Z. Domiaty [4] discovered that the equation (1.3) has infinitely many solutions in \( M_2(Z) \) for \( m = 4. \) Some results relating to the equation of Fermat

2000 Mathematics Subject Classification: 15A24, 15A42.

Keywords and phrases: matrix equations, Fermat’s type equation on matrices, Schur’s Lemma.

This paper is partly supported by EFS (European Social Funds).
in the set of matrices have been described by P. Ribenboim in monograph [15]. In 1995 A. Wiles [18], R. Taylor and A. Wiles [16] proved that (1.3) has no solutions in nonzero integers $X, Y, Z$ if $m > 2$. An important problem is to give a necessary and sufficient condition for solvability the equation (1.3) in the set of matrices. The solvability of (1.3) in $GL_2(\mathbb{Z})$ was first investigated by L. N. Vaserstein [17]. A. Khazanov in cite10 gave necessary and sufficient conditions for solvability (1.3) for $X, Y, Z$ belonging to $SL_2(\mathbb{Z}), SL_3(\mathbb{Z}), GL_3(\mathbb{Z})$. A. Gryczuk [9] proved some necessary condition to satisfy (1.3) in integral $2 \times 2$ matrices $X, Y, Z$, and in [6] he gave an extension of this result. Studies connected with Khazanov’s results effected too H. Qin [14]. The equation of Fermat was investigated by Z. Cao and A. Grytczuk in [2]. In [3] Z. Cao and A. Grytczuk gave a necessary and sufficient condition for the solvability (1.3) for $X, Y, Z \in SL_2(\mathbb{Z})$. Z. Patay and A. Szakacs [13] studied the Fermat’s equation (1.3) in $SL_3(\mathbb{Z})$ and in irreducible elements of the rings $M_2(\mathbb{Z})$ and $M_3(\mathbb{Z})$.

2. Basic Lemma

**Lemma (2.1) (Schur [1]).** Let $A$ be an $n \times n$ complex matrix. Then there is a unitary matrix $P$ such that

$$P^*AP = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & b_{12} & \ldots & b_{1n} \\ & \lambda_2 & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix}$$

where $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_n$ are eigenvalues of the matrix $A$.

3. Results

**Theorem (3.1).** Let $A$ be an integral $2 \times 2$ matrix. The equation (1.1) has a solution in positive integers $x, y, z, w$ and $m > 2$, where $x, y, z, w$ are distinct, if and only if the matrix $A$ is nilpotent or $(\det A = 0$ and $\Tr A = -1)$ or $(\det A = 1$ and $\Tr A = 0)$ or $(\det A = 1$ and $\Tr A = -2)$ or $\det A = \Tr A = 1$.

**Proof.** Suppose that the equation (1.1) holds. If $A$ is a nilpotent matrix, then $A^k = 0$ for all $k \in \mathbb{N}, k \geq 2$. Thus (1.1) is satisfies in this case.

Suppose that $A$ is not nilpotent.

Let $r = \Tr A, s = -\det A$. Then $f(\lambda) = \lambda^2 - r\lambda - s$ is the characteristic polynomial of the matrix $A$ and

$$(3.2) \quad \lambda_1 = \frac{r + \sqrt{r^2 + 4ks}}{2}, \quad \lambda_2 = \frac{r - \sqrt{r^2 + 4ks}}{2}$$

are eigenvalues of $A$.

By Lemma (2.1) there exist a unitary matrix $P$ such that

$$(3.3) \quad A = P^*TP,$$

where $T$ is the upper triangular matrix with the eigenvalues of the matrix $A$ on main diagonal.

From (3.3) by induction for $k \in \mathbb{N}$ we obtain

$$(3.4) \quad A^k = P^*T^kP,$$
where $T^k$ is the upper triangular matrix which has on main diagonal characteristic roots $\lambda_1^k, \lambda_2^k$.

From (1.1) and (3.4) we get
\begin{equation}
(3.5) \quad T_{mx} + T_{my} + T_{mz} = T_{mw}.
\end{equation}

Comparing the elements on the main diagonals we obtain from (3.5)
\begin{equation}
(3.6) \quad \lambda_1^{mx} + \lambda_1^{my} + \lambda_1^{mz} = \lambda_1^{mw},
\end{equation}
\begin{equation}
(3.7) \quad \lambda_2^{mx} + \lambda_2^{my} + \lambda_2^{mz} = \lambda_2^{mw}.
\end{equation}

Now, we assume that $s = 0$. From (3.2) we have $\lambda_1 = \frac{r + |r|}{2}, \lambda_2 = \frac{r - |r|}{2}$. If $r > 0$, then $\lambda_1 = r$ and the equation (3.6) is not satisfied. If $r < 0$, then $\lambda_1 = 0, \lambda_2 = r$. Thus (3.6) holds for $x, y, z, w, m \in N$ and $m > 2$. Analysing the equation (3.7) we obtain that it is satisfied for $r = -1$ if and only if
\begin{equation}
(3.8) \quad mx = 2k_1, my = 2k_2, mw = 2k_3, mz = 2k_4 + 1 or
\end{equation}
\begin{equation}
mx = 2k_1, mz = 2k_2, mw = 2k_3, my = 2k_4 + 1 or
\end{equation}
\begin{equation}
my = 2k_1, mz = 2k_2, mw = 2k_3, mx = 2k_4 + 1 or
\end{equation}
\begin{equation}
mx = 2k_1, my = 2k_2 + 1, mz = 2k_3 + 1, mw = 2k_4 + 1 or
\end{equation}
\begin{equation}
my = 2k_1, mx = 2k_2 + 1, mz = 2k_3 + 1, mw = 2k_4 + 1 or
\end{equation}
\begin{equation}
mz = 2k_1, mx = 2k_2 + 1, my = 2k_3 + 1, mw = 2k_4 + 1, k_1, k_2, k_3, k_4 \in N.
\end{equation}

Let $s \neq 0$. Then the matrix $A$ is nonsingular. Let $u = \min\{x, y, z, w\}$. Since $x, y, z, w$ are distinct, then by (1.1) follows that
\begin{equation}
(3.9) \quad A^{um} = \delta_1 A^{n_1 m} + \delta_2 A^{n_2 m} + \delta_3 A^{n_3 m}, \delta_1, \delta_2, \delta_3 \in \{-1, 1\},
\end{equation}
where $u < n_1 < n_2 < n_3$.

From (3.9) we give
\begin{equation}
(3.10) \quad A^{m(n_1 - u)}(\delta_1 I + \delta_2 A^{m(n_2 - n_1)} + \delta_3 A^{m(n_3 - n_1)}) = I.
\end{equation}

From (3.10) we have
\begin{equation}
(3.11) \quad (\det A)^{m(n_1 - u)} \det(\delta_1 I + \delta_2 A^{m(n_2 - n_1)} + \delta_3 A^{m(n_3 - n_1)}) = 1.
\end{equation}

Denote $B = \delta_1 I + \delta_2 A^{m(n_2 - n_1)} + \delta_3 A^{m(n_3 - n_1)}$. Since $A, B$ are integral matrices, then $\det A, \det B$ are integers. Thus by (3.11) follows that $\det A = \pm 1$. So $s = \pm 1$.

We consider the following ten cases.

1. $r = 0$ and $s = 1$.

   From (3.2) we have $\lambda_1 = 1$. Then the equation (3.6) does not hold.

2. $r > 0$ and $s = 1$.

   Then
\begin{equation}
(3.12) \quad \lambda_1 \geq \frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{2} > \frac{3}{2}.
\end{equation}

   By (3.6) we have
\begin{equation}
(3.13) \quad \lambda_1^{m(x-w)} + \lambda_1^{m(y-w)} + \lambda_1^{m(z-w)} = 1.
\end{equation}
By (3.12) and (3.13) follows that exponents $m(x-w), m(y-w), m(z-w)$ must be negative. The equation (3.13) is not satisfied if all indices are $\leq -3$. Therefore at least one of them must be equal to $-1$ or $-2$, which is impossible, because $x, y, z, w$ and $m > 2$ are natural numbers.

3. $r < 0$ and $s = 1$

Then $\lambda_2 \leq -\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}$, thus $|\lambda_2| \geq \frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}$. Hence

$$|\lambda_2|^2 \geq |\lambda_2| + 1. \quad (3.14)$$

From (3.14) we obtain

$$|\lambda_2|^3 \geq |\lambda_2|^2 + |\lambda_2|. \quad (3.15)$$

Therefore from (3.14) and (3.15) we get

$$|\lambda_2|^3 \geq 2|\lambda_2| + 1. \quad (3.16)$$

Let $\max\{x, y, z, w\} = v$. Then by (3.7) follows that

$$\lambda_2^m = \delta_1 \lambda_2^{m_1} + \delta_2 \lambda_2^{m_2} + \delta_3 \lambda_2^{m_3}, \text{ where } \delta_1, \delta_2, \delta_3 \in \{-1, 1\}, \ v > v_1 > v_2 > v_3.$$ 

Hence

$$|\lambda_2|^m \leq |\lambda_2|^{m_1} + |\lambda_2|^{m_2} + |\lambda_2|^{m_3},$$

which implies

$$3|\lambda_2|^{m_1} > |\lambda_2|^{m}. \quad (3.17)$$

From (3.17) and (3.16) we get a contradiction.

4. $r = 0$ and $s = -1$.

From (3.2) we have $\lambda_1 = \sqrt{-1}$, $\lambda_2 = -\sqrt{-1}$. By an easy calculation we obtain

$$\lambda_1^m = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } mw = 4k \\ \sqrt{-1} & \text{if } mw = 4k + 1 \\ [1pt] -1 & \text{if } mw = 4k + 2 \\ \sqrt{-1} & \text{if } mw = 4k + 3 \end{cases}, \quad k \in N \cup \{0\} \quad (3.18)$$

$$\lambda_2^m = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } mw = 4k \\ -\sqrt{-1} & \text{if } mw = 4k + 1 \\ -1 & \text{if } mw = 4k + 2 \\ \sqrt{-1} & \text{if } mw = 4k + 3 \end{cases}, \quad k \in N \cup \{0\}. \quad (3.19)$$

From (3.18), (3.19), (3.6), (3.7) we observe that the equation (1.1) is satisfied if and only if the following relations are satisfied

$$mx \equiv r_1 (mod\ 4), \ my \equiv r_2 (mod\ 4), \ mz \equiv r_3 (mod\ 4), \ mw \equiv r_4 (mod\ 4),$$

$$\langle r_1, r_2, r_3, r_4 \rangle = \langle 0, 0, 2, 0 \rangle, \langle 2, 0, 0, 0 \rangle, \langle 0, 2, 0, 0 \rangle, \langle 1, 1, 3, 1 \rangle, \langle 3, 1, 1, 1 \rangle, \langle 1, 3, 1, 1 \rangle, \langle 2, 2, 0, 2 \rangle, \langle 2, 0, 2, 2 \rangle, \langle 0, 2, 2, 2 \rangle, \langle 3, 3, 1, 3 \rangle, \langle 1, 3, 3, 3 \rangle, \langle 3, 1, 3, 3 \rangle, \langle 0, 1, 2, 1 \rangle, \langle 0, 2, 1, 1 \rangle, \langle 1, 0, 2, 1 \rangle, \langle 1, 2, 0, 1 \rangle, \langle 2, 0, 1, 1 \rangle, \langle 2, 1, 0, 1 \rangle, \langle 0, 2, 3, 3 \rangle, \langle 0, 3, 2, 3 \rangle, \langle 2, 0, 3, 3 \rangle, \langle 2, 3, 0, 3 \rangle, \langle 3, 0, 2, 3 \rangle, \langle 3, 2, 0, 3 \rangle, \langle 1, 3, 0, 0 \rangle, \langle 1, 0, 3, 0 \rangle, \langle 0, 1, 3, 0 \rangle, \langle 0, 3, 1, 0 \rangle, \langle 3, 0, 1, 0 \rangle, \langle 3, 1, 0, 0 \rangle, \langle 1, 3, 2, 2 \rangle, \langle 1, 2, 3, 2 \rangle, \langle 2, 1, 3, 2 \rangle, \langle 2, 3, 1, 2 \rangle, \langle 3, 1, 2, 2 \rangle, \langle 3, 2, 1, 2 \rangle. \quad (3.20)$$
5. $r = 2$ and $s = -1$.
   Then $\lambda_1 = 1$ and (3.6) is impossible.

6. $r = -2$ and $s = -1$.
   Then $\lambda_1 = -1$ and from (3.6) we obtain the equation
   $$( -1 )^{mx} + ( -1 )^{my} + ( -1 )^{mz} = ( -1 )^{mw} ,$$
   which holds if and only if (3.8).

7. $r \leq -3$ and $s = -1$.
   Then $|\lambda_1| \geq \frac{3 - \sqrt{5}}{2}$, $|\lambda_2| \geq \frac{3 + \sqrt{5}}{2}$. Therefore $\max\{|\lambda_1|, |\lambda_2|\} = |\lambda_2| > \frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{2}$. Similary as in case 3 we obtain a contradiction.

8. $r \geq 3$ and $s = -1$.
   We see that $\max\{|\lambda_1|, |\lambda_2|\} = |\lambda_1| > \frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{2}$ and we get contradiction in a similar way as in case 7.

9. $r = -1$ and $s = -1$.
   Then $\lambda_1 = \frac{-1 + \sqrt{-3}}{2}$ and $\lambda_3 = 1$. Analysing the exponents $mx, my, mz, mw$ modulo 3 in (3.6) it easy to see that (3.6) is impossible.

10. $r = 1$ and $s = -1$.
    Then $\lambda_1 = \frac{1 + \sqrt{-3}}{2}$, $\lambda_2 = \frac{1 - \sqrt{-3}}{2}$ are eigenvalues of $A$. We see that

    $$(3.21) \quad \lambda^m_1 = \begin{cases} 
    1 & \text{if } mw = 6k \\
    \lambda_1 & \text{if } mw = 6k + 1 \\
    \lambda_1^2 & \text{if } mw = 6k + 2 \\
    -1 & \text{if } mw = 6k + 3 \\
    -\lambda_1 & \text{if } mw = 6k + 4 \\
    -\lambda_1^2 & \text{if } mw = 6k + 5 \\
    \end{cases}, \quad k \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{0\}$$

    $$(3.22) \quad \lambda^m_2 = \begin{cases} 
    1 & \text{if } mw = 6k \\
    \lambda_2 & \text{if } mw = 6k + 1 \\
    -\lambda_1 & \text{if } mw = 6k + 2 \\
    -1 & \text{if } mw = 6k + 3 \\
    -\lambda_2 & \text{if } mw = 6k + 4 \\
    \lambda_1 & \text{if } mw = 6k + 5 \\
    \end{cases}, \quad k \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{0\}$$

    From (3.21), (3.22), (3.6) and (3.7) we get that (1.1) holds if and only if the following relations are satisfied
\[(3.23)\]
\[mx \equiv r_1(\mod 6), \; my \equiv r_2(\mod 6), \; mz \equiv r_3(\mod 6), \; mw \equiv r_4(\mod 6),\]
\[\langle r_1, r_2, r_3, r_4 \rangle = (0, 0, 3, 0), (0, 3, 0, 0), (3, 0, 0, 0), (1, 1, 1, 4), (4, 1, 1, 1), (1, 4, 1, 1),\]
\[(2, 2, 5, 2), (5, 2, 2, 2), (2, 5, 2, 2), (3, 3, 0, 3), (3, 0, 3, 3), (3, 0, 3, 3), (4, 4, 1, 4),\]
\[(1, 4, 4, 4), (4, 1, 4, 4), (5, 5, 2, 5), (2, 5, 5, 5), (5, 2, 5, 5), (0, 1, 3, 1), (0, 3, 1, 1),\]
\[(1, 0, 3, 1), (1, 3, 0, 1), (3, 0, 1, 1), (3, 1, 0, 1), (0, 1, 4, 0), (0, 4, 1, 0), (1, 0, 4, 0),\]
\[(1, 4, 0, 0), (4, 0, 1, 0), (4, 1, 0, 0), (0, 2, 3, 2), (0, 3, 2, 2), (3, 2, 0, 2), (3, 0, 2, 2),\]
\[(2, 0, 3, 2), (2, 3, 0, 2), (0, 2, 5, 0), (0, 5, 2, 0), (2, 0, 5, 0), (2, 5, 0, 0), (5, 0, 2, 0),\]
\[(5, 2, 0, 0), (0, 3, 4, 4), (0, 4, 3, 4), (3, 0, 4, 4), (4, 0, 3, 4), (4, 3, 0, 4),\]
\[(0, 3, 5, 5), (0, 5, 3, 5), (3, 0, 5, 0), (3, 5, 0, 0), (5, 0, 3, 5), (5, 3, 0, 5), (1, 2, 4, 2),\]
\[(1, 4, 2, 2), (2, 1, 4, 2), (2, 4, 1, 2), (4, 1, 2, 2), (4, 2, 1, 2), (1, 2, 5, 1), (1, 5, 2, 1),\]
\[(2, 1, 5, 1), (2, 5, 1, 1), (5, 2, 1, 1), (5, 1, 2, 1), (1, 3, 4, 3), (1, 4, 3, 3), (3, 1, 4, 3),\]
\[(3, 4, 1, 3), (4, 1, 3, 3), (4, 3, 1, 3), (1, 4, 5, 5), (1, 5, 4, 5), (4, 1, 5, 5), (4, 5, 1, 5),\]
\[(5, 1, 4, 5), (5, 4, 1, 5), (2, 3, 5, 3), (2, 5, 3, 3), (5, 2, 3, 3), (5, 3, 2, 3), (3, 2, 5, 3),\]
\[(3, 5, 2, 3), (2, 4, 5, 4), (2, 5, 4, 4), (4, 2, 5, 4), (4, 5, 2, 4), (5, 2, 4, 4), (5, 4, 2, 4).\]

The proof of Theorem (3.1) is complete. \(\square\)

From the proof of Theorem (3.1) we obtain the following:

**THEOREM (3.24).** All solutions of the equation \((1.1)\) in positive integers \(x, y, z, w\) and \(m > 2\), where \(x, y, z, w\) are distinct, are given by

\[(10)\] if \((\det A = 0\) and \(\operatorname{Tr} A = -1)\) or \((\det A = 1\) and \(\operatorname{Tr} A = -2)\),

\[(22)\] if \((\det A = 1\) and \(\operatorname{Tr} A = 0)\),

\[(25)\] if \(\det A = \operatorname{Tr} A = 1\), and if \(A\) is a nilpotent matrix with nilpotency index \(k \geq 2\) then \((1.1)\) holds for all natural numbers \(x, y, z, w\) and \(m > 2\) such that \(mx \geq k, my \geq k, mz \geq k, mw \geq k\).

**Acknowledgment**

We would like to thank the Referee for his valuable remarks and comments which allowed the improvement of our paper.

Received March 04, 2008

Final version received March 21, 2009

Faculty of Mathematics
Computer Science and Econometrics
University of Zielona Góra
65-516 Zielona Góra
Poland

A.Grytczuk@wmie.uz.zgora.pl AND I.Kurzydlo@wmie.uz.zgora.pl

**References**


REPRODUCING KERNELS OF WEIGHTED POLY-BERGMAN SPACES ON THE UPPER HALF-PLANE, PART II

JOSUÉ RAMÍREZ ORTEGA

Abstract. Let Π be the upper half-plane. The weighted $n$-poly-Bergman space of Π consists of all functions in $L^2(Π, (λ + 1)(2y)^λ dxdy)$ satisfying the equation $(\frac{∂}{∂z})^n f = 0$. In the case $λ = 0$ new representations of poly-Bergman kernels are given by differentiation of certain rational functions. In general, the weighted poly-Bergman kernels are given by means of the action of a certain operator group on an orthonormal basis of $L^2(\mathbb{R}^+, dx dy)$.

1. Introduction

Using Vasilevski’s methods ([6]), formulae for weighted poly-Bergman kernels of the upper half-plane Π were obtained in [4]. For instance (see [6]), the true-$n$-poly-Bergman kernel of Π is given by

\begin{equation}
K_n(z, ζ) = \frac{-1}{(z - ζ)^2} \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} λ_{jkn} \left( \frac{z - ζ}{ζ - ζ} \right)^j \left( \frac{ζ - ζ}{ζ - ζ} \right)^k, \quad n ≥ 1
\end{equation}

where

\[ λ_{jkn} = \frac{(-1)^{j+k}(n-1) P(n-1) P(k)}{\pi β(j+1, k+1)} \binom{n-1}{j} \binom{n-1}{k}, \]

and $β(x, y)$ is the usual beta function ([5]). In Section 4 we establish a new form of the poly-Bergman kernels. We will see, for instance, that the true-$n$-poly-Bergman kernel is given by differentiation of the rational function

\[ \frac{(ζ + s)^{n-1}}{ζ + s} \left( \frac{ζ + s}{ζ + s} \right)^{n-1}. \]

For weighted poly-Bergman spaces, reproducing kernels are given by the action of the operators

\[ X_ζ = E_t D_τ \quad (ζ = t + i\tau) \]

onto the Laguerre polynomials with suitable weight attached, where $E_t$ and $D_τ$ are defined by $(E_t f)(x) = e^{-itx} f(x)$ and $(D_τ f)(x) = \sqrt{τ} f(τx)$. We point out that the operator group $\mathcal{ED} = \{ X_ζ : ζ ∈ Π \}$ is isomorphic to the semi-direct product $\mathbb{R} \rtimes \mathbb{R}^+$ of the additive group $\mathbb{R}$ and the multiplicative group $\mathbb{R}^+$, as shown in Section 5. On the other hand the Fourier transform of $K_{(n, λ)}(z, ζ)$ with respect to $t = \text{Re} ζ$ was obtained in [4] as a convolution of elements of an orthonormal basis for $L^2(\mathbb{R}^+)$. From this fact the operator group $\mathcal{ED}$ comes out.

Recall that the Bergman space of a domain $G ⊂ \mathbb{C}$ is defined as the space of all analytic functions on $G$ belonging to $L^2(G)$. The Bergman space is denoted

2000 Mathematics Subject Classification: 31A10, 32A36, 46E22, 47B34.

Keywords and phrases: Bergman projection, kernel operator.
by $A^2(G)$. By definition, the Bergman projection $B$ is the orthogonal projection from $L^2(G)$ onto $A^2(G)$. The following integral representation of $B$ is well known ([1]):

$$(Bf)(z) = \int_G K(z, \zeta)f(\zeta)d\mu(\zeta),$$

where $K(z, \zeta)$ is the Bergman kernel of $G$, and $d\mu(\zeta) = dt d\tau$ is the usual Lebesgue measure. For instance ([6]), the Bergman kernel for $\Pi$ is given by

$$K(z, \zeta) = -\frac{1}{\pi(z - \zeta)^2}.$$ 

Introducing generalizations, the weighted $n$-poly-Bergman space $A^2_{n\lambda}(\Pi)$ is the subspace of $L^2(\Pi, d\mu_\lambda)$ consisting of all ($n$-analytic) functions $f(z) = f(x, y)$ which satisfy the equation

$$\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{z}}\right)^n f = 0,$$

where $d\mu_\lambda(z) = (\lambda + 1)(2\gamma)^\lambda dxdy$, and as usual $2\partial/\partial \bar{z} = \partial/\partial x + i\partial/\partial y$ ([6]). Note that $A^2_{10}(\Pi)$ is the Bergman space of $\Pi$. By the Riesz representation theorem we have an integral representation for the orthogonal projection $B_n$ from $L^2(\Pi, d\mu_\lambda)$ onto $A^2_{n\lambda}(\Pi)$:

$$(B_n f)(z) = \int_\Pi f(z, \zeta)K_{n\lambda}(z, \zeta)d\mu_\lambda(\zeta),$$

where $K_{n\lambda}(z, \zeta)$ is the so-called weighted $n$-poly-Bergman kernel of $\Pi$ ([6]).

The weighted true-$n$-poly-Bergman space is defined as

$$A^2_{(n)\lambda}(\Pi) = A^2_{n\lambda}(\Pi) \ominus A^2_{n-1,\lambda}(\Pi),$$

where by convention $A^2_{0\lambda}(\Pi) = \{0\}$. The weighted true-$n$-poly-Bergman projection $B_{(n)}$ is defined as the orthogonal projection from $L^2(\Pi, d\mu_\lambda)$ onto $A^2_{(n)\lambda}(\Pi)$. Obviously

$$B_n = \sum_{k=1}^n B(k).$$

The $n$-anti-analytic and true-$n$-anti-analytic function spaces $\tilde{A}^2_{n\lambda}(\Pi)$ and $\tilde{A}^2_{(n)\lambda}(\Pi)$ are defined along the same lines, with $\partial/\partial \bar{z}$ changed to $\partial/\partial z$. The corresponding orthogonal projections are denoted by $\tilde{B}_n$ and $\tilde{B}_{(n)}$.

2. Bases and Isomorphisms on $L^2(\mathbb{R})$

In this section we will give orthonormal bases for $L^2(\mathbb{R})$, as well as the relationship between them, via unitary operators such as the Fourier transform, dilation and translation operators. We will express the reproducing kernels of weighted poly-Bergman spaces in terms of the action of certain operator groups on the orthonormal bases.

It is well known that the following systems of functions form orthonormal bases for $L^2(\mathbb{R})$:

$$e^\pm_n(y) = (-1)^n L_n(|y|)e^{-|y|/2}x^\pm(y), \quad n \geq 0,$$

$$\phi_n(y) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \frac{1}{1 + iy}, \quad n \in \mathbb{Z},$$

(2.1)
where \( L_n(y) \) is the Laguerre polynomial of degree \( n \)
\[
L_n(y) = \sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k} (-y)^k / k!,
\]
and \( \phi(y) \) is a Möbius transformation defined by
\[
(2.2) \quad \phi(y) = \frac{1/2 - iy}{1/2 + iy}.
\]

As usual, \( \Gamma(z) \) denotes the gamma function. Then for each \( \text{Re} \, \zeta > 0 \),
\[
(2.3) \quad \int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-\zeta t} t^\kappa dt = \frac{\Gamma(\kappa + 1)}{\zeta^{\kappa + 1}},
\]
\[
(2.4) \quad F^*(\frac{k!}{(\zeta \pm iy)^{k+1}}) = \sqrt{\frac{2\pi}{\zeta + y}} e^{-\zeta y} \chi_{\pm}(y),
\]
where \( F \) is the Fourier transform defined by
\[
(2.6) \quad (D_\delta f)(y) = \sqrt{\delta} f(\delta y), \quad (E_b f)(y) = e^{-iby} f(y), \quad (T_b f)(y) = f(y - b).
\]

Let \( \zeta \) be a complex number such that \( \text{Im} \, \zeta > 0 \). Consider the unitary operators
\[
X_\xi = E_{\text{Re} \, \xi} D_{\text{Im} \, \xi}, \quad Y_\xi = T_{-\text{Re} \, \xi} D_{(\text{Im} \, \xi)^{-1}}.
\]

We will use the well-known properties \( FD_\delta = D_{1/\delta} F, FE_b = T_{-b} F, FT_b = E_b F \). These imply, for instance, that \( FY_\xi = X_{-\xi} F, F^2 Y_\xi = Y_{-\xi} F^2, F^2 X_\xi = X_{-\xi} F^2, \) and
\[
FX_\xi = Y_\xi F.
\]

Since \( X_\xi \) and \( Y_\xi \) are unitary, the following systems of functions form orthonormal bases for \( L^2(\mathbb{R}) \):
\[
(2.7) \quad \ell_\xi^{\pm}(y) = (X_\xi D_{2\xi^{-1}}) \ell_n(y) = \sqrt{2\text{Im} \, \xi} e^{-\text{Re} \, \xi y} \ell_n(2\text{Im} \, \xi y), \quad n \geq 0,
\]
\[
\phi_n(y) = (Y_\xi D_{1/2} \phi_n)(y) = \frac{\text{Im} \, \xi}{\pi} \left( \frac{\phi_0(y)^n}{i(\zeta + y)} \right)^n, \quad n \in \mathbb{Z}.
\]
where $\phi_\zeta(y)$ is the Möbius transformation given by

$$\phi_\zeta(y) = \frac{\zeta + y}{\zeta + y}.$$ 

**Theorem (2.9).** We have

$$(F^* \phi_{n\zeta})(y) = \ell_n^+(y), \quad n \geq 0,$$

$$(F^* \phi_{n\zeta})(y) = \ell_{|n|}^{-1}(y), \quad n < 0.$$ 

**Corollary (2.10).** If $\zeta = it$, where $t$ is a real number, then

$$(F^* \phi_{n,it})(y) = \sqrt{2t} \ell_n^+(2ty), \quad n \geq 0,$$

$$(F^* \phi_{n,it})(y) = \sqrt{2t} \ell_{|n|}^{-1}(2ty), \quad n < 0.$$ 

### 3. Related Operator Groups

Let $\mathcal{U}$ be the group of unitary operators acting on $L^2(\mathbb{R})$. The operators of type (2.6) generate unitary subgroups of $\mathcal{U}$, which are related to the reproducing kernels of poly-Bergman spaces (Section 5). Consider the subgroups

$$\mathcal{D} = \{D_\delta : \delta > 0\},$$

$$\mathcal{E} = \{E_b : b \in \mathbb{R}\},$$

$$\mathcal{T} = \{T_b : b \in \mathbb{R}\}.$$ 

Let $\mathbb{R}^+$ stand for the set of positive real numbers. We endow $\mathbb{R}^+$ with the structure of a multiplicative group. For the time being, only the additive structure on $\mathbb{R}$ will be taken into account. Of course the following maps are group homomorphisms

$$\Theta : \mathbb{R}^+ \ni \delta \mapsto D_\delta \in \mathcal{D},$$

$$\Phi : \mathbb{R} \ni b \mapsto E_b \in \mathcal{E},$$

$$\Psi : \mathbb{R} \ni b \mapsto T_b \in \mathcal{T}.$$ 

#### (3.1) The group $\mathcal{E}\mathcal{D}$.** Let $\mathcal{E}\mathcal{D}$ be the group of unitary operators generated by $\mathcal{E}$ and $\mathcal{D}$. Since $D_\delta E_b = E_{\delta b} D_\delta$ we have

$$\mathcal{E}\mathcal{D} = \{E_b D_\delta : b \in \mathbb{R}, \delta \in \mathbb{R}^+\},$$ 

and the product on $\mathcal{E}\mathcal{D}$ is given by

$$(E_b D_\delta)(E_{\tilde{b}} D_{\tilde{\delta}}) = E_{b+\delta \tilde{b}} D_{\delta \tilde{\delta}}.$$ 

On the other hand, the scalar multiplication $\delta b$ is an action of $\mathbb{R}^+$ on $\mathbb{R}$, thus the binary operation on the semidirect product $\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^+$ is given by

$$(b, \delta) \cdot (\tilde{b}, \tilde{\delta}) = (b + \delta \tilde{b}, \delta \tilde{\delta}).$$ 

Now $E_b D_\delta = E_{\tilde{b}} D_{\tilde{\delta}}$ implies that $b = \tilde{b}$ and $\delta = \tilde{\delta}$, so the following map is a group isomorphism from $\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^+$ onto $\mathcal{E}\mathcal{D}$:

$$\Phi : (b, \delta) \mapsto E_b D_\delta.$$ 

Changing notation, we identify each complex number $\zeta = t + i\tau$ with $(t, \tau)$. Of course the group $\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^+$ naturally passes its group structure to $\Pi$, where the multiplication is also denoted by $\cdot$. For $\zeta_k = t_k + i\tau_k \in \Pi$, with $k = 1, 2$, we have

$$X_{\zeta_1} X_{\zeta_2} = X_{\zeta_1 \cdot \zeta_2}.$$
(3.2) The group $\mathcal{T}D$. Similarly we consider the action of $\mathbb{R}^+$ on $\mathbb{R}$ given by the product $\frac{1}{\delta}b$. The semidirect product induced by this action is denoted by $\mathbb{R} \ltimes \mathbb{R}^+$. It is readily seen that the multiplication on this group is given by

$$(b, \delta) \times (\tilde{b}, \tilde{\delta}) = (b + \frac{1}{\delta} \tilde{b}, \delta \tilde{\delta}).$$

Thus $\mathbb{R} \ltimes \mathbb{R}^+$ is isomorphic to the operator group $\mathcal{T}D$, and the isomorphism is defined as follows

$$\Phi_T : (b, \delta) \mapsto T_b D_{\delta}.$$

Proposition (3.1). We have the following commutative diagram of group isomorphisms

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\zeta \in \Pi & \xrightarrow{\Phi_\xi} & X_\xi \in \mathcal{ED}, \\
\Phi \downarrow & & \Phi_F \downarrow \\
\mathbb{R} \ltimes \mathbb{R}^+ & \xrightarrow{\Phi_T} & Y_\xi \in \mathcal{T}D
\end{array}
$$

where $\Phi$ and $\Phi_F$ are defined by

$$\Phi(b, \delta) = (-b, \delta^{-1}),$$

$$\Phi_F(A) = FAF^*.$$

Proposition 3.1 implies that

$$Y_\xi Y_{\xi_2} = Y_{\xi_1 Y_{\xi_2}}.$$

NOTE 1: The group structure on $\mathbb{R} \ltimes \mathbb{R}^+$ generates another one, denoted by $\mathbb{R} \ltimes^* \mathbb{R}^+$, where the binary operation is defined by $(b, \delta) \ast (\tilde{b}, \tilde{\delta}) = (\tilde{b}, \tilde{\delta}) \cdot (b, \delta)$. Then $\mathbb{R} \ltimes^* \mathbb{R}^+$ is isomorphic to $\mathcal{DT} = \mathcal{T}D$, and the isomorphism is given by $(b, \delta) \mapsto D_{\delta}T_b$.

4. Poly-Bergman kernels

In this section we will establish explicit representations of the reproducing kernels of poly-Bergman spaces ($\lambda = 0$). It was shown in [4] (see also [5]) that the Fourier transform of the weighted poly-Bergman kernel $K_{(n+1)\lambda}(z, \zeta)$ with respect to the real part of $\zeta = t + i\tau$ is given by

$$[(F \otimes I_\xi K_{(n+1)\lambda})(z, \zeta) = \frac{2c_{n\lambda}^2}{\sqrt{2\pi}}^\lambda t^{\lambda+1} L_n^\lambda(2ty)L_n^\lambda(2t\tau) e^{-it(\tau + iz)} X_+(t),$$

where $z = x + iy$, $L_n^\lambda$ is the Laguerre polynomial of order $\lambda$ and degree $n$, and

$$c_{n\lambda} = (-1)^n \sqrt{n!/\Gamma(n + \lambda + 1)}.$$

We emphasize that all Fourier transforms applied herein are taken with respect to the real variable $t = \text{Re} \zeta$. Thus, the operator $(F \otimes I_\xi)$ acts on $L^2(\mathbb{R}^2)$ with respect to the variable $\zeta = t + i\tau \in \mathbb{C} = \mathbb{R}^2$.

The Fourier transform of $K_{(n+1)\lambda}(z, \zeta)$ can be rewritten as

$$(4.1) \quad [(F \otimes I_\xi K_{(n+1)\lambda})(z, \zeta) = \frac{t}{\sqrt{2\pi} 2^{\lambda}(\lambda + 1)!/\gamma(\lambda + 1/2)} e^{\lambda t (\gamma_{nz}(t) e^{\lambda t}_{\xi}(t),$$

where

$$e^{\lambda t}_{\xi}(t) = c_{n\lambda}(2\text{Im} z)^{(\lambda+1)/2} t^{\lambda/2} L_n^\lambda(2\text{Im} z t)e^{-it\tau} X_+(t).$$
Let \( \partial_t \) stand for the partial derivation with respect to \( t \). As usual \( \hat{g} \) and \( \check{g} \) denote the Fourier and inverse Fourier transform of \( g \), respectively. We will be using the well-known properties \( F^*(g * h) = \sqrt{2\pi} \hat{g} \hat{h} \) and \( (F^* \partial_t g)(t) = -it(F^* g)(t) \).

**Theorem (4.2).** \((\lambda = 0)\) The reproducing kernel of \( A^2_{(n+1)}(\Pi) \) has the form

\[
K_{(n+1)}(z, \zeta) = \frac{1}{\pi n!} \frac{d^n}{ds^n} \left[ \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \zeta} + \frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{\zeta}} \right) \left\{ \frac{(\bar{z} + s)^n}{\bar{\zeta} + s} \left( \frac{\zeta - \zeta}{\bar{\zeta} + s} \right)^n \right\} \right]_{s=-z}
\]

\[
= \frac{1}{\pi n!} \frac{d^n}{ds^n} \left[ (\bar{z} + s)^n (\zeta + s)^{n-1} \left( \frac{n\zeta - \zeta}{\bar{\zeta} + s} - \frac{\zeta + s}{\bar{\zeta} + s} \right) \right]_{s=-z}.
\]

**Proof.** For the time being, \( z \in \Pi \) and \( \tau = \text{Im} \zeta > 0 \) are fixed. We define the function \( f \) as \( f(t) = K_{(n+1)}(z, \zeta) \), where \( t = \text{Re} \zeta \). Since \( \ell_{nz}^\lambda = \ell_{nz}^0 \) for \( \lambda = 0 \), equality (4.1) takes the form

\[
\hat{f}(t) = \frac{t}{\sqrt{2\pi} \sqrt{\tau}} \ell_{nz}^0(t) \ell_{nz}^0(t)
\]

\[
= \frac{t}{2\pi \sqrt{\tau}} \left| F^*(\phi_{nz} * \phi_{nz})(t) \right|
\]

\[
= \frac{i}{2\pi \sqrt{\tau}} \left| F^* \partial_t (\phi_{nz} * \phi_{nz})(t) \right|
\]

Therefore

\[
\hat{f}(t) = \frac{i}{2\pi \sqrt{\tau}} \left| F^2 \partial_t (\phi_{nz} * \phi_{nz})(t) \right|
\]

By definition of \( \phi_{nz} \), we have

\[
\phi_{nz}(t) = \left( \frac{1}{\pi i(\bar{z} + t)} \right) \left( -\frac{z + t}{\bar{z} + t} \right)^n,
\]

\[
\phi_{nz}(t) = \left( \frac{1}{\pi \tau} \right) \left( -\frac{\tau - it}{\tau + it} \right)^n.
\]

Thus, the convolution is given by

\[
\frac{1}{\sqrt{3\tau}} (\phi_{nz} * \phi_{nz})(t) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{1}{i(\bar{z} + s)} \left( -\frac{z + s}{\bar{z} + s} \right)^n \frac{1}{\tau + it} \left( \frac{\tau - it}{\tau + it} \right)^n \frac{1}{\bar{\zeta} - s} \left( \frac{\zeta - s}{\bar{\zeta} - s} \right)^n ds
\]

\[
= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{1}{i(\bar{z} + s)} \left( -\frac{z + s}{\bar{z} + s} \right)^n \frac{1}{\bar{\zeta} - s} \left( \frac{\zeta - s}{\bar{\zeta} - s} \right)^n ds
\]

\[
= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{1}{\bar{z} + s} \left( \frac{z + s}{\bar{z} + s} \right)^n \frac{1}{\bar{\zeta} - s} \left( \frac{\zeta - s}{\bar{\zeta} - s} \right)^n ds.
\]

By considering \( s \) as a complex variable, the holomorphic function

\[
\Phi(s) = \frac{1}{\bar{z} + s} \left( \frac{z + s}{\bar{z} + s} \right)^n \frac{1}{\bar{\zeta} - s} \left( \frac{\zeta - s}{\bar{\zeta} - s} \right)^n
\]
has the complex number $s = -\bar{z}$ as unique pole in the upper half-plane. Of course $s = -\bar{z}$ is a pole of order $n + 1$, thus

$$
\frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi t}} (\phi_{nz} * \phi_{n,ir})(t) = -\frac{2i}{n!} \frac{d^n}{ds^n} \left[ \frac{(z + s)^n}{\bar{z} - s} \left( \frac{\zeta - s}{\bar{z} - s} \right)^n \right] \bigg|_{s = -\bar{z}}.
$$

Since $(F^2 g)(t) = g(-t)$, we have $F^2 \partial_t = -\partial_t F^2$. Therefore

$$
\bar{f}(t) = \frac{1}{\pi n!} F^2 \partial_t \frac{d^n}{ds^n} \left[ \frac{(z + s)^n}{\bar{z} - s} \left( \frac{\zeta - s}{\bar{z} - s} \right)^n \right] \bigg|_{s = -\bar{z}}
$$

$$
= -\frac{1}{\pi n!} \partial_t \frac{d^n}{ds^n} \left[ \frac{(z + s)^n}{-\bar{z} - s} \left( \frac{-\zeta - s}{-\bar{z} - s} \right)^n \right] \bigg|_{s = -\bar{z}}
$$

$$
= \frac{1}{\pi n!} \frac{d^n}{ds^n} \left[ \partial_t \left\{ \frac{(z + s)^n}{\zeta + s} \left( \frac{\bar{\zeta} + s}{\zeta + s} \right)^n \right\} \right] \bigg|_{s = -\bar{z}}.
$$

The first equality to be proven follows by conjugating $\bar{f}(t)$. On the other hand, $\partial_t = \frac{\partial}{\partial s} + \frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{s}}$, thus

$$
\bar{f}(t) = \frac{1}{\pi n!} \frac{d^n}{ds^n} \left[ (z + s)^n \left( - (n + 1) \frac{\bar{\zeta} + s}{(\zeta + s)^{n+2}} + n \frac{(\zeta + s)^{n-1}}{(\zeta + s)^{n+1}} \right) \right] \bigg|_{s = -\bar{z}}
$$

$$
= \frac{1}{\pi n!} \frac{d^n}{ds^n} \left[ (z + s)^n \left( \frac{\bar{\zeta} + s}{(\zeta + s)^{n+1}} \right) \right] \bigg|_{s = -\bar{z}}
$$

We complete the proof by performing complex conjugation.

Let us compute now the reproducing kernel of $A_{n+1}^2(\Pi)$. First of all, by the Christoffel-Darboux identity ([2, 4, 5]) we have

$$
\sum_{k=0}^{n} c_{k\lambda}^2 L_k^\lambda(x)L_k^\lambda(y) = -\frac{(n + 1)c_{n\lambda}^2}{x - y} \left( L_{n+1}^\lambda(x)L_n^\lambda(y) - L_n^\lambda(x)L_{n+1}^\lambda(y) \right).
$$

Thus

$$
(4.3) \sum_{k=0}^{n} \ell_{k2}(t)\ell_{k,ir}(t) = \frac{\sqrt{(n + 1)(\lambda + n + 1)}}{2t(y - \tau)} \left( \ell_{n+1,2}(t)\ell_{n,ir}(t) - \ell_{n,2}(t)\ell_{n+1,ir}(t) \right).
$$

**Theorem (4.4).** ($\lambda = 0$) The reproducing kernel of $A_{n+1}^2(\Pi)$ admits the representation

$$
K_{n+1}(z, \zeta) = -\frac{1}{\pi n!(z - \bar{z} - \zeta + \bar{\zeta})} \frac{d^{n+1}}{ds^{n+1}} \left[ \frac{(z + s)^{n+1}}{\bar{\zeta} + s} \left( \frac{\zeta + s}{\bar{\zeta} + s} \right)^n \right] \bigg|_{s = -\bar{z}}
$$

$$
+ \frac{(n + 1)}{\pi n!(z - \bar{z} - \zeta + \bar{\zeta})} \frac{d^n}{ds^n} \left[ \frac{(z + s)^n}{\bar{\zeta} + s} \left( \frac{\zeta + s}{\bar{\zeta} + s} \right)^{n+1} \right] \bigg|_{s = -\bar{z}}.
$$
Proof. Consider \( \lambda = 0 \). Let \( g(t) \) stand for \(((F \otimes I)_{\zeta} \overline{K}_{n+1})(z, \zeta)\), where \( \zeta = t + i\tau \).

Recall that \( K_{n+1} = \sum_{k=1}^{n+1} K(k) \). By the Christoffel-Darboux identity we have

\[
g(t) = \frac{t}{\sqrt{2\pi y \tau}} \sum_{k=0}^{n} \ell_{k,2}(t) \ell_{k,ir}(t)
\]

\[
= \frac{n+1}{2 \sqrt{2\pi y \tau (y - \tau)}} \left( \ell_{n+1,2}(t) \ell_{n,ir}(t) - \ell_{n,2}(t) \ell_{n+1,ir}(t) \right)
\]

\[
= \frac{n+1}{2 \sqrt{2\pi y \tau (y - \tau)}} \left( F^* \phi_{n+1,2} \phi_{n,ir} - F^* \phi_{n,2} \phi_{n+1,ir} \right)
\]

\[
= \frac{n+1}{4\pi \sqrt{(y - \tau)}} \left( F^* \left( \phi_{n+1,2} \phi_{n,ir} - \phi_{n,2} \phi_{n+1,ir} \right) \right)(t).
\]

Thus

\[
K_{n+1}(z, \zeta) = \frac{n+1}{4\pi \sqrt{(y - \tau)}} \left( \phi_{n+1,2} \phi_{n,ir} - \phi_{n,2} \phi_{n+1,ir} \right) (-t).
\]

But

\[
\frac{1}{2 \sqrt{y \tau}} (\phi_{n+1,2} \phi_{n,ir})(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{1}{z+s} \left( \frac{z+s}{z} \right)^{n+1} \left( \frac{\zeta-s}{\zeta} \right)^n ds,
\]

\[
\frac{1}{2 \sqrt{y \tau}} (\phi_{n,2} \phi_{n+1,ir})(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{1}{z+s} \left( \frac{z+s}{z} \right)^n \left( \frac{\zeta-s}{\zeta} \right)^{n+1} ds.
\]

Therefore

\[
\frac{1}{2 \sqrt{y \tau}} (\phi_{n+1,2} \phi_{n,ir} - \phi_{n,2} \phi_{n+1,ir})(t)
\]

equals

\[
\frac{i}{(n+1)!} \frac{d^{n+1}}{ds^{n+1}} \left. \left[ \frac{(z+s)^{n+1}}{\zeta-s} \left( \frac{\zeta-s}{\zeta} \right)^n \right] \right|_{s=-\bar{z}} - \frac{i}{n!} \frac{d^n}{ds^n} \left. \left[ \frac{(z+s)^n}{\zeta-s} \left( \frac{\zeta-s}{\zeta} \right)^{n+1} \right] \right|_{s=-\bar{z}}.
\]

By evaluating at \( -t \) and then performing complex conjugation, the preceding expression takes the form

\[
\frac{i}{(n+1)!} \frac{d^{n+1}}{ds^{n+1}} \left. \left[ \frac{(\zeta+s)^{n+1}}{\bar{\zeta}+s} \left( \frac{\zeta+s}{\bar{\zeta}} \right)^n \right] \right|_{s=-z} - \frac{i}{n!} \frac{d^n}{ds^n} \left. \left[ \frac{(\zeta+s)^n}{\bar{\zeta}+s} \left( \frac{\zeta+s}{\bar{\zeta}} \right)^{n+1} \right] \right|_{s=-z}.
\]

Finally, this expression multiplied by \((n+1)/[2\pi(y - \tau)]\) equals the reproducing poly-Bergman kernel, where \(2i(y - \tau) = z - \bar{z} - \zeta - \bar{\zeta} \).

\[\Box\]

Theorem (4.5). \((\lambda = 0)\) The reproducing poly-Bergman kernel of \(A^2_{(n+1)}(\Pi)\) has the form

\[
\tilde{K}_{(n+1)}(z, \zeta) = \frac{1}{\pi n!} \frac{d^n}{ds^n} \left. \left[ \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \zeta} + \frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{\zeta}} \right) \left( \frac{(z+s)^n}{\zeta+s} \left( \frac{\zeta+s}{\zeta} \right)^n \right) \right] \right|_{s=-\bar{z}}
\]

\[
= \frac{1}{\pi n!} \frac{d^n}{ds^n} \left. \left[ (z+s) \frac{\zeta+s}{(\zeta+s)^{n+1}} \left( n \frac{\zeta-s}{\zeta+s} - \frac{\bar{z}+s}{\bar{\zeta}+s} \right) \right] \right|_{s=-\bar{z}}.
\]
Theorem (4.6). (λ = 0) The reproducing poly-Bergman kernel of $\tilde{A}^2_{n+1}(\Pi)$ admits the representation

$$\tilde{K}_{n+1}(z, \zeta) = \frac{1}{\pi^n!} \frac{d^{n+1}}{ds^{n+1}} \left[ \frac{(z + s)^{n+1}}{\zeta + s} \left( \frac{\zeta + s}{\zeta + s} \right)^n \right]_{s = -z} \quad \text{for } n \geq 1.$$

We conclude this section mentioning some general properties of poly-Bergman kernels. Let $A$ be any of the poly-Bergman spaces $A^2_n(\Pi), A^2_n(\Pi), \tilde{A}^2_n(\Pi)$ or $\tilde{A}^2_n(\Pi)$. Let $K(z, \zeta)$ denote the reproducing poly-Bergman kernel of $A$. Then, for any $n$-analytic (anti-analytic) function $f \in A$,

$$f(z) = \int_{\Pi} f(\zeta)K(z, \zeta)dV(\zeta).$$

Furthermore

- $K(z, \zeta) = \overline{K(\zeta, z)}$,
- $|f(z)| \leq \|f\| \|K(z, \cdot)\| \quad \forall z \in \Pi, \forall f \in A$,
- $\sup\|f(z)\| = \|K(z, \cdot)\|, \quad \sup\\|f\| \leq 1$,
- $\|K(z, \cdot)\| = \sqrt{K(z, z)}$.

Corollary (4.7). The norms of the reproducing kernels are given by

1) $K_n(z, z) = \tilde{K}_n(z, z) = -\frac{2n-1}{\pi(z - z)^2} = \frac{2n-1}{4\pi z^2}$,

2) $K_n(z, z) = \tilde{K}_n(z, z) = -\frac{n^2}{\pi(z - z)^2} = \frac{n^2}{4\pi z^2}$.

Proof. We will compute $K_{n+1}(z, z)$. By Theorem 4.2 and the Leibniz formula for derivation, we have

$$\pi^n!K_{n+1}(z, z) = \frac{d^n}{ds^n} \left[ \frac{(z + s)^{n-1}}{(z + s)^2} - (n[z - z] - [z + s]) \right]_{s = -z} \quad \text{for } n \geq 1.$$

This proves statement 1). Statement 2) follows from $K_n(z, z) = \sum_{k=1}^n K_{(k)}(z, z)$.

5. Weighted Poly-Bergman kernels

In this section we will see that the weighted poly-Bergman kernels are given by the action of the unitary groups $\mathcal{U}$ and $\mathcal{T}$ on the orthonormal systems of
functions
\[ \ell_n^\lambda(t) = c_n t^{\lambda/2} L_n^\lambda(t) e^{-t/2} \chi_+(t), \]
\[ \phi_n^\lambda = F\ell_n^\lambda. \]

For each \( \text{Im} \, \zeta > 0 \), the unitary operator \( X_\zeta \) and the Fourier transform give rise to new systems of orthonormal functions in \( L^2(\mathbb{R}) \):
\[ \ell_n^\lambda(\zeta) = X_\zeta D_2 \ell_n^\lambda, \]
\[ \phi_n^\lambda(\zeta) = F\ell_n^\lambda. \]

In order to simplify our notation we define
\[ k_n^\lambda = D_2 \ell_n^\lambda, \]
\[ \psi_n^\lambda = Fk_n^\lambda. \]

**Theorem (5.1).** The reproducing kernel of \( A_{n+1}^2(\Pi) \) is given by
\[ K_{n+1}(z, \zeta) = a(\lambda)(y, \tau) \partial_t \langle X_k^\lambda n, X_\zeta k_n^\lambda \rangle \]
\[ = a(\lambda)(y, \tau) \partial_t \langle Y_k^\lambda n, Y_\zeta \psi_n^\lambda \rangle, \]
where \( z = x + yi, \zeta = t + \tau i \), and
\[ a(\lambda)(y, \tau) = \frac{i}{2^{\lambda+1} \pi (\lambda + 1) (y \tau)^{\lambda+1/2}}. \]

**Proof.** We define \( f(t) = K_{n+1}(z, \zeta) \). Repeating some arguments given in the proof of Theorem 4.2 we have
\[ \hat{f}(t) = \frac{t}{\sqrt{2 \pi} 2^{\lambda}(\lambda + 1) (y \tau)^{\lambda+1/2}} \ell_n(\zeta) \ell_n(\zeta) (t) \]
\[ = \frac{i}{2 \pi 2^{\lambda}(\lambda + 1) (y \tau)^{\lambda+1/2}} [F^* \partial_t (\phi_n^\lambda(n \tau) * \phi_n^\lambda(n \tau))](t). \]
Since \( F^2 \partial_t = -\partial_t F^2 \) we have
\[ \hat{f}(t) = -a(\lambda)(y, \tau)[\partial_t F^2(\phi_n^\lambda(n \tau) * \phi_n^\lambda(n \tau))](t). \]

The convolution of two functions in \( L^2(\mathbb{R}) \) can be written as \( (g * h)(t) = \langle g, F^2 T_{-t} h \rangle \). Note now that \( F T_{-t} F^* X_{ir} = X_{-\zeta} \) for \( t, \tau \) fixed. Therefore the convolution of \( \phi_n^\lambda(n \tau) \) and \( \phi_n^\lambda(n \tau) \) evaluated at \( t \) is given by
\[ (\phi_n^\lambda(n \tau) * \phi_n^\lambda(n \tau))(t) = \langle FX_\zeta D_2 \ell_n^\lambda, F^2 T_{-t} FX_{ir} D_2 \ell_n^\lambda \rangle \]
\[ = \langle X_\zeta D_2 \ell_n^\lambda, FT_{-t} F^* X_{ir} D_2 \ell_n^\lambda \rangle \]
\[ = \langle X_\zeta D_2 \ell_n^\lambda, X_{-\zeta} D_2 \ell_n^\lambda \rangle. \]

By taking the Fourier transform twice with respect to \( t \) we get
\[ (5.2) \quad [F^2(\phi_n^\lambda(n \tau) * \phi_n^\lambda(n \tau))](t) = \langle X_\zeta h_n^\lambda, X_{-\zeta} k_n^\lambda \rangle. \]

The first part of the theorem follows immediately. The second equality follows from \( FX_\zeta = Y_\zeta F \) and \( FX_{ir} = Y_{-\zeta} F \). \( \square \)
Theorem (5.3). The conjugation of the reproducing kernel of $A^2_{n+1,\lambda}(\Pi)$ is given by

$$K_{n+1,\lambda}(z, \zeta) = a_\lambda \left( \langle X_z k_{n+1}^\lambda, X_\zeta k_{n+1}^\lambda \rangle - \langle X_z k_n^\lambda, X_\zeta k_{n+1}^\lambda \rangle \right)$$

where $z = x + yi$, $\zeta = t + \tau i$, and

$$a_\lambda = a_\lambda(y, \tau) = \sqrt{(n + 1)(\lambda + n + 1)} \cdot \frac{2\pi^{(\lambda+1)/2}}{2\pi^{(\lambda+1)/2}(\lambda + 1)(y - \tau)(y\tau)^{(\lambda+1)/2}}.$$

Proof. Let $g(t)$ be $K_{n+1,\lambda}(z, \zeta)$. Since $K_{n+1,\lambda} = \sum_{k=1}^{n+1} K_{k,\lambda}$, by (4.1) and (4.3) we have

$$\hat{g}(t) = \sqrt{2\pi} a_\lambda \left( \ell_{n+1, z}^\lambda(t) \ell_{n, i\tau}^\lambda(t) - \ell_{n+1, i\tau}^\lambda(t) \ell_{n, z}^\lambda(t) \right)$$

$$= \sqrt{2\pi} a_\lambda \left( F^* \phi_{n+1, z}^\lambda F^* \phi_{n, i\tau}^\lambda - F^* \phi_{n, z}^\lambda F^* \phi_{n+1, i\tau}^\lambda \right)(t)$$

or

$$\bar{g}(t) = a_\lambda [F^2 \left( \phi_{n+1, z}^\lambda \phi_{n, i\tau}^\lambda - \phi_{n, z}^\lambda \phi_{n+1, i\tau}^\lambda \right)](t).$$

The rest of the proof follows from an equality similar to (5.2). \qed

Acknowledgement

This work was performed as part of PROMEP project #103.5/04/1411 “Knowledge Generation and Application” (“Fomento a la Generación y Aplicación del Conocimiento”).

J. RAMÍREZ ORTEGA
FACULTAD DE MATEMÁTICAS
UNIVERSIDAD VERACRUZANA
XALAPA VER., MÉXICO, C.P. 91000
josramirez@uv.mx

REFERENCES

AN OPTIMAL CONTROL PROBLEM ON THE LIE GROUP
SE(2, R) × SO(2)

ANANIA ARON, CAMELIA POP, AND MIRCEA PUTA

ABSTRACT. An optimal control problem on the Lie group SE(2, R) × SO(2) is discussed and some of its dynamical and geometrical properties are pointed out.

1. Introduction

In the last time there was a great deal of interest in the study of control problems on matrix Lie group due to their applications in spacecraft dynamics and subacvatic dynamics. The goal of our paper is to study an optimal control problem on the Lie group SE(2, R) × SO(2) and to point out some of its dynamical and geometrical properties.

2. The geometrical picture of the problem

Let G be the Lie group given by:

\[ G = SE(2, \mathbb{R}) \times SO(2) \]

\[
G = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix}
\cos \phi & -\sin \phi & x & 0 & 0 \\
\sin \phi & \cos \phi & y & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & \cos \theta & -\sin \theta \\
0 & 0 & 0 & \sin \theta & \cos \theta
\end{bmatrix} \bigg| x, y \in \mathbb{R}, \phi, \theta \in [0, 2\pi] \right\}
\]

Then a basis of its Lie algebra \( se(2, R) \times so(2) \) is given by:

\[
A_1 = \begin{bmatrix}
0 & -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0
\end{bmatrix}, \quad A_2 = \begin{bmatrix}
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0
\end{bmatrix},
\]

\[
A_3 = \begin{bmatrix}
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0
\end{bmatrix}, \quad A_4 = \begin{bmatrix}
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0
\end{bmatrix}.
\]

The Lie algebra structure of \( G \) is given by the following table:

2000 Mathematics Subject Classification: 34H05.
Keywords and phrases: optimal control, nonlinear stability, Lie-Trotter algorithm, Kahan algorithm.
\[
\begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|}
\hline
[i..] & A_1 & A_2 & A_3 & A_4 \\
\hline
A_1 & 0 & 0 & A_4 & -A_3 \\
A_2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
A_3 & -A_4 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
A_4 & A_3 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
\hline
\end{array}
\]

It is not hard to see now that the minus-Lie-Poisson structure on \( G^* \) is generated by the matrix:

\[
\Pi_\equiv = \begin{bmatrix}
   0 & 0 & -x_4 & x_3 \\
   0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
x_4 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
-x_3 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
\end{bmatrix}.
\]

An easy computation leads us via Chow’s theorem [6] to:

**Proposition (2.1).** There exists three left invariant controllable systems on \( G \), namely:

\[
\begin{align*}
\dot{X} &= X(A_1 u_1 + A_2 u_2 + A_3 u_3), \\
\dot{X} &= X(A_1 u_1 + A_2 u_2 + A_4 u_4), \\
\dot{X} &= X(A_1 u_1 + A_2 u_2 + A_3 u_3 + A_4 u_4),
\end{align*}
\]

where \( X \in G \).

The goal of our paper is to study some geometrical and dynamical properties for the system (2.2). Similar results can also be obtained for the systems (2.3) and (2.4).

3. An optimal control problem for the system (2.2)

Let \( J \) be the cost function given by:

\[
J(u_1, u_2, u_3) = \frac{1}{2} \int_0^{t_f} \left[ c_1 u_1^2(t) + c_2 u_2^2(t) + c_3 u_3^2(t) \right] dt
\]

\( c_1 > 0, c_2 > 0, c_3 > 0 \).

Then we have:

**Proposition (3.1).** The controls that minimize \( J \) and steer the system (2.2) from \( X = X_0 \) at \( t = 0 \) to \( X = X_f \) at \( t = t_f \) are given by:

\[
\begin{align*}
u_1 &= \frac{1}{c_1} x_1, \\
u_2 &= \frac{1}{c_2} x_2, \\
u_3 &= \frac{1}{c_3} x_3,
\end{align*}
\]

where \( x_i \)'s are solutions of:

\[
\begin{align*}
\dot{x}_1 &= -\frac{1}{c_3} x_3 x_4 \\
\dot{x}_2 &= 0 \\
\dot{x}_3 &= \frac{1}{c_1} x_1 x_4 \\
\dot{x}_4 &= -\frac{1}{c_1} x_1 x_3.
\end{align*}
\]
Proof. Let us apply Krishnaprasad’s theorem [10]. It follows that the optimal Hamiltonian is given by:

\[ H(x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4) = \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{x_1^2}{c_1} + \frac{x_2^2}{c_2} + \frac{x_3^2}{c_3} \right). \]

It is in fact the controlled Hamiltonian \( H \) given by:

\[ H(x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4) = x_1 u_1 + x_2 u_2 + x_3 u_3 - \frac{1}{2}(c_1 u_1^2 + c_2 u_2^2 + c_3 u_3^2), \]

which is reduced to \( \mathcal{G}^* \) via Poisson reduction. Then the optimal controls are given by:

\[ u_1 = \frac{1}{c_1} x_1, \quad u_2 = \frac{1}{c_2} x_2, \quad u_3 = \frac{1}{c_3} x_3, \]

where \( x_i \)'s are solutions of the reduced Hamilton’s equations given by:

\[ [\dot{x}_1, \dot{x}_2, \dot{x}_3, \dot{x}_4]^t = \Pi \cdot \nabla H \]

which are nothing else then the required equations (3.2).

Remark (3.3). It is easy to see from the equations (3.2) that \( x_2 = \text{constant} \) and so the dynamics (3.2) can be put in the equivalent form:

\[
\begin{align*}
\dot{x}_1 &= -\frac{1}{c_3} x_3 x_4 \\
\dot{x}_3 &= \frac{1}{c_1} x_1 x_4 \\
\dot{x}_4 &= -\frac{1}{c_1} x_1 x_3.
\end{align*}
\]

(3.4)

PROPOSITION (3.5). The dynamics (3.4) has the following Hamilton-Poisson realization:

\( (\mathbb{R}^3, \Pi, H) \),

where

\[
\Pi = \begin{bmatrix}
0 & -x_4 & x_3 \\
x_4 & 0 & 0 \\
-x_3 & 0 & 0
\end{bmatrix}
\]

and

\[ H(x_1, x_3, x_4) = \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{x_1^2}{c_1} + \frac{x_3^2}{c_3} \right). \]

Proof. Indeed, it is not hard to see that the dynamics (3.4) can be put in the equivalent form:

\[ [\dot{x}_1, \dot{x}_3, \dot{x}_4]^t = \Pi \cdot \nabla H, \]

as required.

Via Bermejo-Feiren’s technique [3] we are lead immediately to:

PROPOSITION (3.6). The Poisson structure \( \Pi \) has only one functionally independent Casimir given by:

\[ C(x_1, x_3, x_4) = \frac{1}{2} (x_3^2 + x_4^2). \]
Remark (3.7). The phase curves of the dynamics (3.4) are intersections of
\[ \frac{x_1^2}{c_1} + \frac{x_3^2}{c_3} = \text{constant} \]
with
\[ x_3^2 + x_4^2 = \text{constant}, \]
see the Figure 3.1.

![Figure 3.1. The phase curves of the system (3.4)](image)

**Proposition (3.8).** The dynamics (3.4) has an infinite number of Hamilton-Poisson realizations.

**Proof.** An easy computation shows us that the triples:
\((\mathbb{R}^3, \{\cdot, \cdot\}_{ab}, H_{cd})\),
where
\[ \{f, g\}_{ab} = -\nabla C_{ab} \cdot (\nabla f \times \nabla g), \quad (\forall)f, g \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^3, \mathbb{R}) \]
\[ C_{ab} = aC + bH, \]
\[ H_{cd} = cC + dH, \]
\[ H(x_1, x_3, x_4) = \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{x_1^2}{c_1} + \frac{x_3^2}{c_3} \right), \]
\[ C(x_1, x_3, x_4) = \frac{1}{2}(x_3^2 + x_4^2), \]
\[ a, b, c, d \in \mathbb{R}, \quad ad - bc = 1, \]
define Hamilton-Poisson realizations of the dynamics (3.4), as required.

**Remark (3.9).** The above proposition tell us in fact that the equation (3.4) is unchanged, so the trajectories of motion in \(\mathbb{R}^3\) remain the same when \(H\) and \(C\) are replaced by \(SL(2, \mathbb{R})\) combinations of \(H\) and \(C\).

**Proposition (3.10).** The dynamics (3.4) can be reduced to the pendulum dynamics.
Proof. It is clear that
\[
\frac{x_1^2}{c_1} + \frac{x_2^2}{c_3} = 2H
\]
and
\[
x_2^2 + x_4^2 = 2C
\]
are constants of motion. If we take now
\[
\begin{cases}
x_3 = \sqrt{2C} \cos \theta \\
x_4 = \sqrt{2C} \sin \theta,
\end{cases}
\]
then we have successively:
\[
\dot{x}_3 = -\sqrt{2C} \sin \theta \cdot \dot{\theta} = -\sqrt{2C} \frac{x_4}{\sqrt{2C}} \cdot \dot{\theta}
\]
and so
\[
\frac{\dot{x}_3}{x_4} = -\frac{1}{c_1} x_1 x_4 = -\frac{1}{c_1} x_1.
\]
Differentiating again we obtain:
\[
\ddot{\theta} = -\frac{1}{c_1} \left( -\frac{1}{c_3} \right) x_3 x_4
\]
\[
= \frac{1}{c_1 c_3} 2C \sin \theta \cos \theta
\]
or equivalent:
\[
\ddot{\theta} = \frac{C}{c_1 c_3} \sin 2\theta,
\]
which is the pendulum dynamics, as required.

4. Stability

It is not hard to see that the equilibrium states of our dynamics (3.4) are:
\[
e_1^M = (M, 0, 0), \ M \in \mathbb{R}
\]
\[
e_2^M = (0, M, 0), \ M \in \mathbb{R}
\]
\[
e_3^M = (0, 0, M), \ M \in \mathbb{R}.
\]

Let A be the matrix of the linear part of our system (3.4), i.e.,
\[
A = \begin{bmatrix}
0 & \frac{1}{c_3} x_4 & \frac{1}{c_3} x_3 \\
\frac{1}{c_1} x_4 & 0 & \frac{1}{c_1} x_1 \\
-\frac{1}{c_1} x_3 & -\frac{1}{c_1} x_1 & 0
\end{bmatrix}
\]

Then the characteristic roots of \(A(e_1^M)\) [resp. \(A(e_2^M)\), resp. \(A(e_3^M)\)] are respectively given by:
\[
\lambda_1 = 0, \ \lambda_{2,3} = \pm \frac{M}{c_1}
\]
[resp]
\[
\lambda_1 = 0, \ \lambda_{2,3} = \pm \frac{M}{\sqrt{c_1 c_3}}
\]
\[ \lambda_1 = 0, \lambda_{2,3} = \pm i \frac{M}{\sqrt{c_1 c_3}} \]

and so we can conclude that:

**PROPOSITION (4.1).** The equilibrium states \( e_1^M, e_2^M, e_3^M, M \in \mathbb{R} \), have the following behavior:

(i) \( e_1^M, M \in \mathbb{R} \) is spectrally stable.
(ii) \( e_2^M, M \in \mathbb{R} \) is unstable.
(iii) \( e_3^M, M \in \mathbb{R} \) is spectrally stable.

We can now pass to discuss the nonlinear stability of the equilibrium states \( e_1^M \) and \( e_3^M \), \( M \in \mathbb{R} \).

**PROPOSITION (4.2).** The equilibrium states \( e_1^M, M \in \mathbb{R}^* \), are nonlinear stable.

**Proof.** We shall make the proof using Arnold’s technique [2] see also [4]. Let \( F_\lambda \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^3, \mathbb{R}) \) be the smooth function given by:

\[
F_\lambda(x_1, x_3, x_4) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \frac{1}{2}(x_3^2 + x_4^2) + \lambda \left( \frac{x_1^2}{c_1} + \frac{x_3^2}{c_3} \right).
\]

Then we have successively:

(i) \( \nabla F_\lambda(e_1^M) = 0 \) iff \( \lambda = 0 \).

(ii) \( W = \ker dH(e_1^M) = \text{span} \left( \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \right) \).

(iii) \( (\forall)v \in W, \text{i.e.}, v = [0, \alpha, \beta]^t, \alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{R} \) we have:

\[
v^t \nabla^2 F_0(e_1^M)v = \alpha^2 + \beta^2
\]

and so

\[
\nabla^2 F_0(e_1^M) \bigg|_{W \times W}
\]

is positive definite.

Therefore, via Arnold’s technique, the equilibrium states \( e_1^M, M \in \mathbb{R}^* \) are nonlinear stable as required.

**PROPOSITION (4.3).** The equilibrium states \( e_3^M, M \in \mathbb{R}^* \), are nonlinear stable.

**Proof.** We shall make the proof using Arnold’s method [2] see also [4]. Let \( G_\lambda \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^3, \mathbb{R}) \) be the smooth function given by:

\[
G_\lambda(x_1, x_3, x_4) = \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{x_1^2}{c_1} + \frac{x_3^2}{c_3} \right) + \frac{\lambda}{2} (x_3^2 + x_4^2).
\]

Then we have successively:

(i) \( \nabla G_\lambda(e_3^M) = 0 \) iff \( \lambda = 0 \).

(ii) \( W = \ker dC(e_3^M) = \text{span} \left( \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \right) \).
(iii) \((\forall)v \in W\), i.e., \(v = [\alpha, \beta, 0]^t\), \(\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{R}\) we have:

\[
v^t \nabla^2 G_0(e^M) v = \frac{1}{c_1} \alpha^2 + \frac{1}{c_3} \beta^2
\]

and so

\[
\nabla^2 G_0(e^M) \big|_{W \times W}
\]

is positive definite.

Therefore, via Arnold’s method, the equilibrium states \(e^M, M \in \mathbb{R}^*\) are nonlinear stable as required. \(\square\)

**Remark (4.4).** It is not hard to see that the equilibrium state \((0, 0, 0)\) is nonlinear stable. Indeed, this is a consequence of Lyapunov direct method [7] via the Lyapunov function \(H + C\).

### 5. The existence of periodic solutions

For begining, let us observe that the Lie algebra \((\mathbb{R}^3, [\cdot, \cdot])\) is isomorphic to the Lie algebra \((se(2, \mathbb{R}), [\cdot, \cdot])\) and so the Poisson structure \(\Pi\) is in fact a minus-Lie-Poisson structure on \((\mathbb{R}^3)^* \simeq (se(2, \mathbb{R}))^* \simeq \mathbb{R}^3\).

It is clear that the restriction of our system (3.4) to the generic coadjoint orbit:

\[
x_3^2 + x_4^2 = M^2
\]
gives rise to a classical Hamiltonian system. Then we have:

**Proposition (5.1).** Near to \(e^M_3 = (0, 0, M), M \in \mathbb{R}^*\), the reduced dynamics has, for each sufficiently small value of the reduced energy, at least 1-periodic solution whose period is close to \(2\pi \sqrt{c_1 c_3 / |M|}\).

**Proof.** Indeed, we have successively:

(i) The matrix of the linear part of the reduced dynamics has purely imaginary roots. More exactly:

\[
\lambda_{2,3} = \pm M i / \sqrt{c_1 c_3}.
\]

(ii) \(\text{span} (\nabla C(e^M_3)) = V_0\), where

\[
V_0 = \ker(A(e^M_3)).
\]

(iii) The reduced Hamiltonian has a local minimum at the equilibrium state \(e^M_3\) (see the proof of Proposition 4.3).

Then our assertion follows via the Moser-Weinstein theorem with zero eigenvalue, see for details [5]. \(\square\)

### 6. Lax formulation and numerical integration of the dynamics (3.4)

A long but straightforward computation or using eventually MATHEMATICA leads us to:

**Proposition (6.1).** The dynamics (3.4) has the following formulation:

\[
\dot{L} = [L, B],
\]
where
\[
L = \begin{bmatrix}
x_4 \\
x_1 + x_3 \\
\frac{c_3(x_3 - x_1)}{c_1 + c_3} \\
\frac{-x_4}{c_1 + c_3}
\end{bmatrix}
\]
and
\[
B = \begin{bmatrix}
x_4 \\
\frac{x_3}{c_1} \\
\frac{c_3}{c_1 + c_3} x_3 \\
\frac{2c_1}{2c_1 c_3} 0
\end{bmatrix}.
\]

Let us pass now to the numerical integration of the dynamics (3.4).

It is easy to see that for the equations (3.4), Kahan’s integrator \([9]\) ca be
written in the following form:
\[
\begin{aligned}
x_1^{n+1} - x_1^n &= -\frac{h}{2c_3} (x_3^{n+1} x_4^n + x_4^{n+1} x_3^n) \\
x_3^{n+1} - x_3^n &= \frac{h}{2c_1} (x_1^{n+1} x_4^n - x_4^{n+1} x_1^n) \\
x_4^{n+1} - x_4^n &= -\frac{h}{2c_1} (x_1^{n+1} x_3^n - x_3^{n+1} x_1^n)
\end{aligned}
\]
(6.2)

A long but straightforward computation or using eventually MATHEMATICA
lead us to:

**Proposition (6.3).** Kahan’s integrator (6.2) has the following properties:

(i) It is not Poisson preserving.

(ii) It does not preserve the Casimir \(C\) of our Poisson configuration \((\mathbb{R}^3, \Pi)\).

(iii) It does not preserve the Hamiltonian \(H\) of our system (3.4).

We shall discuss now the numerical integration of the dynamics (3.4) via
the Lie-Trotter integrator [11], [12], [13].

For beginning, let us observe that the Hamiltonian vector field \(X_H\) splits as
follows:
\[
X_H = X_{H_1} + X_{H_3},
\]
where
\[
H_1(x_1, x_3, x_4) = \frac{1}{2c_1} x_1^2
\]
and
\[
H_3(x_1, x_3, x_4) = \frac{1}{2c_3} x_3^2.
\]

Their corresponding integral curves are respectively given by:
\[
\begin{bmatrix}
x_1(t) \\
x_3(t) \\
x_4(t)
\end{bmatrix} = A_i \begin{bmatrix}
x_1(0) \\
x_3(0) \\
x_4(0)
\end{bmatrix}, \quad i = 1, 3,
\]
where
\[
A_1 = \begin{bmatrix}
1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & \cos at & \sin at \\
0 & -\sin at & \cos at
\end{bmatrix},
\]
\[
a = \frac{1}{c_1} x_1(0)
\]
and

\[
A_3 = \begin{bmatrix}
1 & 0 & -bt \\
0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1
\end{bmatrix},
\]

\[
b = \frac{1}{c_3} x_3(0)
\]

Then the Lie-Trotter integrator is given by:

\[
(6.4) \quad \begin{bmatrix}
x_1^{n+1} \\
x_3^{n+1} \\
x_4^{n+1}
\end{bmatrix} = A_1 A_3 \begin{bmatrix}
x_1^n \\
x_3^n \\
x_4^n
\end{bmatrix};
\]

Now, a direct computation or using eventually MATHEMATICA leads us to:

**Proposition (6.5).** The Lie-Trotter integrator (6.4) has the following properties:

(i) It preserves the Poisson structure \( \Pi \).

(ii) It preserves the Casimir \( C \) of our Poisson configuration \( (\mathbb{R}^3, \Pi) \).

(iii) It doesn’t preserve the Hamiltonian \( H \) of our system (3.4).

(iv) Its restriction to the coadjoint orbit \( (O_k, \omega_k) \), where

\[
O_k = \{(x_1, x_3, x_4) \in \mathbb{R}^3 | x_3^2 + x_4^2 = 2k^2\}
\]

and \( \omega_k \) is the Kirilov-Kostant-Souriau symplectic structure on \( O_k \) gives rise to a symplectic integrator.

**Remark (6.6).** If we make a comparison with the 4th-step Runge-Kutta method we obtain almost the same results. However, Kahan’s integrator and the Lie-Trotter integrator have the advantage to be easier implemented, see Figures 6.1, 6.2 and 6.3.
7. Heteroclinic orbits for the dynamics (3.4)

For beginning, let us observe that our dynamics (3.4) can be put in the equivalent form:

\[
\begin{align*}
\dot{x}_1 &= a_1 x_3 x_4 \\
\dot{x}_3 &= a_2 x_1 x_4 \\
\dot{x}_4 &= a_3 x_1 x_3
\end{align*}
\]

(7.1)

where

\[
a_1 = -\frac{1}{c_3}; \ a_2 = \frac{1}{c_1}; \ a_3 = -\frac{1}{c_1}
\]
Let us take now:

\[
\begin{align*}
    x_1 &= d_1 \sec h \, k \, t \\
    x_3 &= d_2 \tgh \, k \, t \\
    x_4 &= d_3 \sec h \, k \, t \\
\end{align*}
\]

(7.2)

If we plug (7.2) in (7.1) we have:

\[
\begin{align*}
    -d_1 k &= a_1 d_2 d_3 \\
    d_2 k &= a_2 d_1 d_3 \\
    -d_3 k &= a_3 d_1 d_2
\end{align*}
\]

So,

\[ d_1 d_2 d_3 k^3 = a_1 a_2 a_3 d_1^2 d_2^2 d_3^2 \]

and then we are lead immediately to:

\[
\begin{align*}
    d_1^2 &= -\frac{k^2}{a_2 a_3} \\
    d_2^2 &= \frac{k^2}{a_1 a_3} \\
    d_3^2 &= -\frac{k^2}{a_1 a_2}
\end{align*}
\]

Hence we have:

\[
\begin{align*}
    x_1(t) &= \pm k \sqrt{-\frac{a_2}{a_3}} \sec h \, k \, t \\
    x_3(t) &= \pm k \sqrt{\frac{a_1}{a_3}} \tgh \, k \, t \\
    x_4(t) &= \pm k \sqrt{-\frac{a_2}{a_1}} \sec h \, k \, t
\end{align*}
\]

(7.3)

On the other hand we have:

\[
\lim_{t \to \infty} \frac{k}{\sqrt{a_1 a_3}} \tgh \, k \, t = \pm k \sqrt{a_1 a_3}
\]

and if we impose the condition:

\[
\lim_{t \to \infty} \frac{k}{\sqrt{a_1 a_3}} \tgh \, k \, t = M
\]

(7.4)

we can conclude that:

\[ k = M \sqrt{a_1 a_3} \]

Therefore we have proved:

**Proposition (7.5).** There exists four heteroclinic orbits between the equilibrium states \((0, M, 0)\) and \((0, -M, 0)\), \(M \in \mathbb{R}, M \neq 0\) given by (7.3) and (7.4)

**Remark (7.6).** The heteroclinic orbits (7.3), (7.4) belong to the planes:

\[ x_4 = \pm \sqrt{\frac{a_2}{a_1}} x_1. \]

**Acknowledgements**

The work of M. Puta was partially supported by the “Romanian Grant for Mathematics 2007-2009” and the “Agreement for direct cultural and scientific cooperation between the University of Rome “La Sapienza” and The West University of Timișoara.”

*Received February 27, 2008*

*Final version received June 29, 2009*
REFERENCES


A TRIGONOMETRIC-HYPERBOLIC FUNCTIONAL EQUATION 
AND ITS APPLICATION

JAE-YOUNG CHUNG

ABSTRACT. We consider the Hyers-Ulam stability of the trigonometric-hyperbolic type functional equation

\[ f(x - y, s + t) = f(x, s)f(y, t) + g(x, s)g(y, t), \quad x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n, \quad s, t > 0. \]

As an application we prove a distributional analogue of the Hyers-Ulam stability problem of the trigonometric functional equation

\[ h(x - y) = h(x)h(y) + k(x)k(y), \quad x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n. \]

1. Introduction

Considering a certain class of functional equations and their Hyers-Ulam stability problems in some spaces of generalized functions such as the Schwartz tempered distributions, Fourier hyperfunctions, and so on, we need to control some modified functional equations which appear while converting given distributional version of the stability problems to classical ones. For example, stability problems of the quadratic functional equation and d’Alembert equation in the generalized functions yield the quadratic-additive type and d’Alembert-exponential type functional equations, respectively (see [5]). Likewise, if we consider a distributional version of the well known trigonometric functional equation

\[ h(x - y) - h(x)h(y) - k(x)k(y) = 0, \quad x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n, \]

the following trigonometric-hyperbolic type functional equation appears:

\[ f(x - y, s + t) = f(x, s)f(y, t) + g(x, s)g(y, t), \quad x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n, \quad s, t > 0. \]

In this article, we first consider the equation (1.2) involving functions \( f, g \) in a more general domain and secondly we prove the Hyers-Ulam stability of the equation (1.2). As an application we prove the distributional version of Hyers-Ulam stability of the equation (1.1).

The classical stability problems of functional equations go back to 1940 when S. M. Ulam proposed the following problem [23]:

Let \( f \) be a mapping from a group \( G_1 \) to a metric group \( G_2 \) with metric \( d(\cdot, \cdot) \) such that

\[ d(f(xy), f(x)f(y)) \leq \varepsilon. \]
Then does there exist a group homomorphism $L$ and $\delta_\epsilon > 0$ such that 
\[ d(f(x), L(x)) \leq \delta_\epsilon \]
for all $x \in G_1$?

This problem was solved affirmatively by D.H. Hyers [12] under the assumption that $G_2$ is a Banach space. In 1978, Th.M. Rassias [18] first generalized the above result and since then, stability problems of many other functional equations have been investigated by the authors such as J. A. Baker [2], [3], [4], S. Czerwik [6], G. Isac [11], S.M. Jung [13], K.W. Jun [13], H.M. Kim [13], C.G. Park [16], L. Székelyhidi [20], [21], I. Tyrala [22]. Among the results, L. Székelyhidi [20] proved the Hyers-Ulam stability of trigonometric functional equations which is very similar to the equation (1.1).

2. The general solution of equation (1.2) and its Hyers-Ulam stability

In this section generalizing the equation (1.2) we consider the equation: Let $f, g : G \times S \to \mathbb{C}$ satisfy
\[ (2.1) \quad f(x - y, s + t) = f(x, s)f(y, t) + g(x, s)g(y, t), \quad x, y \in G, \quad s, t \in S. \]
where $G$ is an abelian group and $S$ is a semigroup which is commutative, both of which are divisible by 2, and $\mathbb{C}$ is the field of complex numbers.

Note that a function $m$ from a (semi)group to a field is called exponential provided that $m(s + t) = m(s)m(t)$.

**Theorem (2.2).** The general solutions $f, g : G \times S \to \mathbb{C}$ of the trigonometric–hyperbolic type functional equation (2.1) are either
\[ (2.3) \quad f(x, s) = \frac{1}{2}m(s)(h(x) + h(-x)), \quad g(x, s) = \frac{1}{2i}m(s)(h(x) - h(-x)), \]
where $m$ and $h$ are exponentials on $S$ and $G$, respectively, or else
\[ (2.4) \quad f(x, s) = f_0(s), \quad g(x, s) = g_0(s), \]
where $(f_0, g_0)$ is a solution of the hyperbolic functional equation
\[ (2.5) \quad f_0(s + t) = f_0(s)f_0(t) + g_0(s)g_0(t), \quad s, t \in S. \]

*Proof.* Replace $x$ by $y, y$ by $x$ and put $t = s$ in (2.1), and compare with (2.1) to get
\[ f(-y, 2s) = f(y, 2s), \]
which implies
\[ (2.6) \quad f(y, s) = f(-y, s) \]
for all $(y, s) \in G \times S$, since $S$ is divisible by 2. Replacing $x, y$ by $-x, -y$ in (2.1), respectively, and using (2.6) we have
\[ (2.7) \quad f(x - y, s + t) = f(x, s)f(y, t) + g(-x, s)g(-y, t). \]
It follows from (2.1) and (2.7) that
\[ (2.8) \quad g(x, s)g(y, t) = g(-x, s)g(-y, t). \]
One can see that from (2.8) we obtain
\[ (2.9) \quad g(x, s) = g(-x, s) \]
for all \((x, s) \in G \times S\), or else
\[
(2.10) \quad g(x, s) = -g(-x, s)
\]
for all \((x, s) \in G \times S\). If (2.9) holds, replace \(y\) by \(-y\) in (2.1) to get
\[
(2.11) \quad f(x + y, s + t) = f(x, s) + f(y, t) - g(x, s)g(y, t),
\]
which implies \(f(x, t) = f(0, t)\) for all \((x, t) \in G \times S\), since both \(G\) and \(S\) are divisible by 2. Thus, in view of (2.1), \(g(x, t)\) also does not depend on \(x \in G\), which gives (2.4) and (2.5).

If the equality (2.10) holds, replace \(y\) by \(-y\) in (2.1) to get
\[
(2.12) \quad f(x + y, s + t) = f(x, s)f(y, t) - g(x, s)g(y, t).
\]
From (2.1) and (2.12) we have the d'Alembert-exponential type functional equation
\[
(2.13) \quad f(x + y, s + t) + f(x - y, s + t) = 2f(x, s)f(y, t).
\]
Replacing \(x\) by \(y\), and \(y\) by \(x\) and using (2.6) and (2.13) we have
\[
f(x, s)f(y, t) = f(y, s)f(x, t),
\]
which implies
\[
(2.14) \quad f(0, s)^{-1}f(x, s) = f(0, t)^{-1}f(x, t),
\]
for all \(x \in G\) and \(s, t \in S_0 := \{s \in S | f(0, s) \neq 0\}\). If \(S_0 = \emptyset\), it follows from (2.13) that \(f(x, s) = 0\) for all \((x, s) \in G \times S\), which implies the trivial case \(f = g = 0\). If \(S_0 \neq \emptyset\), we may write
\[
(2.15) \quad F(x) := f(0, s)^{-1}f(x, s),
\]
for all \(x \in G, s \in S_0\). Put \(x = y = 0\) in (2.13) to get
\[
(2.16) \quad f(0, s + t) = f(0, s)f(0, t)
\]
for all \(s, t \in S\). Now, for any \(s \notin S_0\), let \(s = 2u\). Then it follows from (2.16) that \(u \notin S_0\). Put \(y = 0, s = t = u\) in (2.13) to get
\[
(2.17) \quad f(x, s) = f(x, 2u) = f(x, u)f(0, u) = 0,
\]
for all \(x \in G, s \notin S_0\). Thus it follows from (2.15) and (2.17) that
\[
(2.18) \quad f(x, s) = f(0, s)F(x),
\]
for all \((x, s) \in G \times S\). Now choose \(s_0 \in S_0\), and divide (2.13) by \(f(0, s_0)^2 = f(0, 2s)\) and put \(s = t = s_0\) to get
\[
(2.19) \quad F(x + y) + F(x - y) = 2F(x)F(y), \quad x, y \in G.
\]
Therefore, we have proved that \(F\) satisfies the classical d'Alembert functional equation and due to J. A. Baker [1] p. 222 the general solution of the equation (2.19) is given by
\[
(2.20) \quad F(x) = \frac{1}{2}(h(x) + h(-x)),
\]
where \(h(x + y) = h(x)h(y)\) for all \(x, y \in G\). Thus we have
\[
(2.21) \quad f(x, s) = \frac{1}{2}m(s)(h(x) + h(-x)),
\]
with \( m(s) = f(0, s) \). Finally, putting (2.21) in (2.1) we have
\[
g(x, s)g(y, t) = -\frac{1}{4} m(s)m(t)(h(x) - h(-x))(h(y) - h(-y)).
\]
Consequently we obtain
\[
(2.22) \quad g(x, s) = \pm \frac{1}{2i} m(s)(h(x) - h(-x)).
\]
The minus sign in (2.22) disappears by substitution of \( h(x) \) by \( h(-x) \). By a straightforward calculation one may check that \( f \) and \( g \) given by (2.2) satisfy (2.1). This completes the proof. \( \square \)

**Remark.** The author would like to know if the above result holds true without the assumptions that \( G \) and \( S \) are divisible by 2.

As a consequence of the above result we have the following.

**Corollary (2.23).** Let \( f, g: \mathbb{R}^n \times (0, \infty) \to \mathbb{C} \) be continuous functions satisfying the equation
\[
f(x - y, s + t) = f(x, s)f(y, t) + g(x, s)g(y, t), \quad x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n, s, t > 0.
\]
Then the solutions \((f, g)\) are given by the following:

1. \( f = g = 0 \),
2. \( f(x, s) = e^{ps}, \ g(x, s) = \frac{\lambda e^{ps}}{1 + \lambda^2}, \ \lambda^2 \neq -1, \)
3. \( f(x, s) = (qs + 1)e^{ps}, \ g(x, s) = \pm iqs e^{ps}, \)
4. \( f(x, s) = e^{ps}(\cos qs + \lambda \sin qs), \ g(x, s) = \pm i\sqrt{1 + \lambda^2} e^{ps} \sin qs, \)
5. \( f(x, s) = e^{ps} \cosh(a \cdot x), \ g(x, s) = e^{bs} \sinh(a \cdot x), \)

where \( p, q, \lambda \in \mathbb{C}, a \in \mathbb{C}^n \).

**Proof.** It is well known in [1] that the continuous solutions of the equation (2.5) are given by i), ii), iii) and iv). In view of (2.2), if \( f(x, s) \) and \( g(x, s) \) are continuous and are of the form (2.2) then \( m(s) \) and \( h(x) \) are continuous and hence \( m(s) = e^{ps}, h(x) = e^{a \cdot x} \) for some \( p \in \mathbb{C}, a \in \mathbb{C}^n \), which gives v). This completes the proof. \( \square \)

Now we consider the stability of the following trigonometric-hyperbolic functional equation.

**Theorem (2.25).** Let \( M > 0 \) and let \( f, g: \mathbb{R}^n \times (0, \infty) \to \mathbb{C} \) be continuous functions satisfying the inequality
\[
(2.26) \quad |f(x - y, s + t) - f(x, s)f(y, t) - g(x, s)g(y, t)| \leq M, \quad x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n, s, t > 0.
\]
Then \((f, g)\) satisfies one of the following:

1. \( f(x, s) \) and \( g(x, s) \) are bounded on the strip \( \mathbb{R}^n \times (0, 1) \),
2. \( f(x, s) = e^{ps} \cosh(a \cdot x), \ g(x, s) = e^{ps} \sinh(a \cdot x), \)

where \( p \in \mathbb{C}, a \in \mathbb{C}^n \).

**Proof.** Following the same approach as in [20] we can verify that either there exist \( \mu, \nu \in \mathbb{C}, \) not both zero, and \( L > 0 \) such that
\[
(2.27) \quad |\mu f(x, s) - \nu g(x, s)| \leq L, \quad x \in \mathbb{R}^n, s > 0
\]
or else

\[(2.28) \quad f(x - y, s + t) = f(x, s)f(y, t) + g(x, s)g(y, t), \quad x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n, \ s, t > 0.\]

If the equation (2.28) holds, then by Corollary (2.23) the solutions \((f, g)\) satisfies (i) or (ii). Now we consider the case where (2.27) holds. If \(g\) is bounded, then \(f(x - y, s + t) - f(x, s)f(y, t)\) is bounded, which implies \(f(x, s)\) is bounded in \(\mathbb{R}^n \times (0, 1)\). If \(g\) is unbounded, then \(f\) is also unbounded, hence \(\mu \neq 0\) and \(\nu \neq 0\). Thus we can write

\[(2.29) \quad f = \lambda g + B\]

for some \(\lambda \neq 0\) and a bounded function \(B\). Putting (2.29) in (2.26) it is easy to see that

\[(x, s) \rightarrow g(x + y, s + t) - \lambda^{-1}\left((\lambda^2 + 1)g(-y, t) + \lambda B(-y, t)\right)g(x, s)\]

is a bounded function for each \(y \in \mathbb{R}^n, \ t > 0\). Using Theorem 5.2 of [12] we have

\[(2.30) \quad \lambda^{-1}\left((\lambda^2 + 1)g(y, t) + \lambda B(y, t)\right) = m(y, t)\]

for an exponential \(m\). Thus if \(\lambda^2 \neq -1\) we have

\[g = \frac{\lambda(m - B)}{\lambda^2 + 1}, \quad f = \frac{\lambda^2 m + B}{\lambda^2 + 1}.\]

From (2.29) and the continuity of \(f\) and \(g\) we have \(m(y, t) = e^{a \cdot y + bt}\). Now it follows from (2.26) that \(|f(x, s) - f(-x, s)| \leq 2M\) and hence we obtain \(a = 0\). Thus the case (i) follows. If \(\lambda^2 = -1\) it follows from (2.29) and (2.30)

\[(2.31) \quad g = \pm i(f - m)\]

for some bounded exponential function \(m\). Put (2.31) in (2.26) to get

\[(2.32) \quad |f(x - y, s + t) - f(x, s)m(y, t) - f(y, t)m(x, s)| \leq M\]

for all \(x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n, \ t > 0\). Since \(m\) is a bounded exponential we obtain \(m(x, s) = e^{a \cdot x + bs}\) for some \(a \in i\mathbb{R}^n, \ b \in \mathbb{C}\) with \(\Re b < 0\). Put \(y = x, \ t = s\) in (2.32) and use the triangle inequality to get

\[(2.33) \quad |f(x, s)| \leq \frac{1}{2}e^{-(\Re b)s}(M + |f(0, 2s)|).\]

It follows from the inequality (2.32) together with the continuity of \(f\) that \(f(0, s)\) is bounded in \((0, 1)\). Thus \(f(x, s)\) is bounded in \(\mathbb{R}^n \times (0, 1)\) and so is \(g\). Thus the case (i) follows. This completes the proof.

\[\square\]

3. **Application to Hyers-Ulam stability problem of (1.1) in Schwartz distributions**

As an application we consider a distributional version of the following Hyers-Ulam stability problem of the trigonometric functional equation

\[(3.1) \quad |h(x - y) - h(x)h(y) - k(x)k(y)| \leq M\]

in the space \(S'({\mathbb{R}^n})\) of Schwartz tempered distributions, the space \(\mathcal{F}'({\mathbb{R}^n})\) of Fourier hyperfunctions and the space \(S^{1/2}({\mathbb{R}^n})\) of Gelfand generalized functions. For a theory of Schwartz tempered distributions we refer the reader to [8, 9, 19]. Here we briefly introduce the spaces of Gelfand generalized
functions and Fourier hyperfunctions. Here we use the following notation:

\[ |x| = \sqrt{x_1^2 + \ldots + x_n^2}, \quad |\alpha| = \alpha_1 + \cdots + \alpha_n, \quad x^\alpha = x_1^{\alpha_1} \cdots x_n^{\alpha_n} \quad \text{and} \quad \partial^\alpha = \partial_1^{\alpha_1} \cdots \partial_n^{\alpha_n}, \]

for \( x = (x_1, \ldots, x_n) \in \mathbb{R}^n \), \( \alpha = (\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n) \in \mathbb{N}_0^n \), where \( \mathbb{N}_0 \) is the set of non-negative integers and \( \partial_j = \frac{\partial}{\partial x_j} \).

**Definition (3.2).** [8] For given \( r, s \geq 0 \) we denote by \( \mathcal{S}^r_s \) or \( \mathcal{S}^r_s(\mathbb{R}^n) \) the space of all infinitely differentiable functions \( \varphi(x) \) on \( \mathbb{R}^n \) such that there exist positive constants \( h \) and \( k \) satisfying

\[
(3.3) \quad \|\varphi\|_{h,k} := \sup_{x \in \mathbb{R}^n, \alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{N}_0^n} \frac{|x^\alpha \partial^\beta \varphi(x)|}{h^{\alpha} k^{\beta} |\alpha!| |\beta!| s} < \infty.
\]

The topology on the space \( \mathcal{S}^r_s \) is defined by the seminorms \( \| \cdot \|_{h,k} \) given by (3.3) and the elements of the dual space \( \mathcal{S}^r_s \) of \( \mathcal{S}^r_s \) are called Gelfand-Shilov generalized functions. In particular, we denote \( \mathcal{S}^{1/2}_1 \) by \( \mathcal{F}' \) and call its elements Fourier hyperfunctions.

It is known that if \( r > 0 \) and \( 0 \leq s < 1 \), the space \( \mathcal{S}^r_s(\mathbb{R}^n) \) consists of all infinitely differentiable functions \( \varphi(x) \) on \( \mathbb{R}^n \) that can be extended to an entire function on \( \mathbb{C}^n \) satisfying

\[
(3.4) \quad |\varphi(x + iy)| \leq C \exp(-a|x|^{1/r} + b|y|^{1/(1-s)})
\]

for some \( a, b > 0 \). It is well known that the following topological inclusions hold:

\[
\mathcal{S}^{1/2}_1 \hookrightarrow \mathcal{F} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{S}, \quad \mathcal{S}' \hookrightarrow \mathcal{F}' \hookrightarrow \mathcal{S}^{1/2}_1.
\]

As in [5] we generalized the inequality (3.1) involving generalized functions \( u, v \) as \( u \circ B - u \otimes u - v \otimes v \in L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^{2n}) \)

\[
(3.5) \quad u \circ B - u \otimes u - v \otimes v \in L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^{2n})
\]

where \( B(x, y) = x - y, x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n \) and \( \otimes \) denotes the tensor product of generalized functions.

We denote by \( E_r(x) \) the \( n \)-dimensional heat kernel

\[
(3.6) \quad E_r(x) = (4\pi t)^{-n/2} \exp(-|x|^2 / 4t), \quad t > 0.
\]

Let \( u \in \mathcal{S}^{1/2}_1 \). Then its Gauss transform \( f(x, t) := (u \ast E_r)(x) = \langle u, E_r(x - y) \rangle \)

is a \( C^\infty \)-solution of the heat equation

\[
(\Delta - \partial_t) f(x, t) = 0
\]

in \( \{(x, t) : x \in \mathbb{R}^n, t > 0\} \). Also \( (u \ast E_r)(x) \to u \) as \( t \to 0^+ \) in the sense of generalized functions.

**Lemma (3.7).** [24] Let \( f(x, t) \) be a solution of the heat equation satisfying

\[
|f(x, t)| \leq M, \quad x \in \mathbb{R}^n, \quad t \in (0, 1).
\]

Then \( f \) can be written as

\[
f(x, t) = (f_0 \ast E_r)(x) = \int f_0(y) E_r(x - y) dy
\]

for some bounded measurable function \( f_0 \) defined in \( \mathbb{R}^n \).
Theorem (3.8). Let \( u, v \in S^{1/2}_1 \) satisfy (3.5). Then \( u \) and \( v \) satisfy one of the followings:

i) \( u \) and \( v \) are bounded measurable functions,

ii) \( u = \cosh(a \cdot x), v = \sinh(a \cdot x) \),

where \( a \in \mathbb{C}^n \).

Proof. Convolving with \( E_s(x)E_t(y) \) in (3.4), in view of the semigroup property 
\((E_s \ast E_t)(x) = E_{s+t}(x)\) of the heat kernel, we have for some \( M > 0 \),
\[ |f(x - y, s + t) - f(x, s)f(y, t) - g(x, s)g(y, t)| \leq M \]
for all \( x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n, s, t > 0 \), where \( f(x, t), g(x, t) \) are the Gauss transforms of \( u \) and \( v \). Now we apply Theorem 2.3. If \( f(x, t) \) and \( g(x, t) \) are bounded in the strip \( \mathbb{R}^n \times (0, 1) \), letting \( t \to 0^+ \) we have the case (i) by Lemma 3.2. If \( f(x, t) = e^{pt} \cosh(a \cdot x), g(x, t) = e^{pt} \sinh(a \cdot x) \), letting \( t \to 0^+ \) we get the case (ii). This completes the proof. \( \Box \)

Taking the growth of \( u = \cosh(a \cdot x), v = \sinh(a \cdot x) \) as \( |x| \to \infty \) into account we obtain \( a = ia' \) for some \( a' \in \mathbb{R}^n \) provided that \( u, v \in F' \). Thus we have the following.

Corollary (3.10). Let \( u, v \in S' \) or \( u, v \in F' \) satisfy (3.4). Then \( u \) and \( v \) are bounded measurable functions.

Acknowledgments

This work was supported by the Korean Research Foundation Grant funded by the Korean Government (MOEHRD, Basic Research Promotion Fund) (KRF-2006-521-C00010).

The author would like to express his sincere gratitude to the referee for many valuable comments and corrections.

Received February 28, 2007

Final version received May 6, 2009

Department of Mathematics,
Kunsan National University,
Kunsan 573-701, Republic of Korea
jychung@kunsan.ac.kr

References


ORTHOGONAL POLYNOMIALS ON RAYS: CHRISTOFFEL’S FORMULA

ABDON E. CHOQUE RIVERO AND SERGEY M. ZAGORODNYUK

Abstract. Christoffel’s formula is an important property of orthogonal polynomials on the real line. In this paper we obtain a generalization of this formula in the case of orthogonal polynomials on rays with a non-negative matrix measure. Using this generalization we get explicit formulas for a new system of orthogonal polynomials. Some properties of the corresponding kernel polynomials are obtained. Relations between the recursion coefficients of the original polynomials and the recursion coefficients of the polynomials corresponding to the perturbed measure are derived.

1. Introduction

Let \( \alpha(x) \) be a non-decreasing function on \([a, b]\), \(-\infty < a < b < +\infty\), with finite power moments:

\[
\int_a^b x^n d\alpha(x) < \infty, \quad \text{for all } n \in \mathbb{Z}_+.
\]

Suppose that \( \alpha(x) \) has an infinite number of points of increase. Applying the Gram-Schmidt orthogonalization to the monomial basis \( 1, \lambda, \lambda^2, \ldots \), one obtains the well-known real orthogonal polynomials \( \{p_n(\lambda)\}_{n \in \mathbb{Z}_+} \) satisfy the orthonormality relations

\[
\int_a^b p_n(x)p_m(x)d\alpha(x) = \delta_{n,m}, \quad n, m \in \mathbb{Z}_+.
\]

Among their numerous properties there is the following important fact, known as Christoffel’s formula \([3],[13]\), which is a representation of polynomials that are orthogonal with respect to a polynomial perturbation of a positive Borel measure.

THEOREM (1.3). Let \( \{p_n(\lambda)\}_{n \in \mathbb{Z}_+} \) be an orthonormal system of polynomials on \([a, b]\) with respect to \(d\alpha(x)\). Let

\[
\rho(x) = c(x - x_1)(x - x_2)\ldots(x - x_l), \quad c \neq 0,
\]

be a non-negative polynomial of degree \( l \) on \([a, b]\).

2000 Mathematics Subject Classification: 42C05, 33C45.
Keywords and phrases: Orthogonal polynomials; Christoffel’s formula.
Supported by Project 25551 CONACYT, México; SNI, Project CIC of UMSNH, México.
Let polynomials \( \{q_n(\lambda)\}_{n \in \mathbb{Z}_+} \) be defined by the following determinant

\[
(1.5) \quad \rho(x)q_n(x) = \begin{vmatrix}
p_n(x) & p_{n+1}(x) & \cdots & p_{n+l}(x) \\
p_n(x_1) & p_{n+1}(x_1) & \cdots & p_{n+l}(x_1) \\
\vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\
p_n(x_l) & p_{n+1}(x_l) & \cdots & p_{n+l}(x_l)
\end{vmatrix}.
\]

Then the polynomials \( \{q_n(\lambda)\}_{n \in \mathbb{Z}_+} \) are orthogonal with respect to \( \rho(x)\,d\alpha(x) \).

If the zero \( x_k \) has multiplicity \( m > 1\), then the corresponding rows in the determinant \( (1.5) \) should be replaced by the derivatives of degree 0, 1, 2, \ldots, \( m-1 \) of polynomials \( p_n(x), p_{n+1}(x), \ldots, p_{n+l}(x) \) at the point \( x = x_k \).

In particular, from Christoffel’s formula one can get explicit formulas for new orthogonal systems of polynomials using already known systems. For further details on determinants of orthogonal polynomials, we refer to Karlin and McGregor [9].

The Christoffel formula \( (1.5) \) when \( \rho(x) \) is a linear polynomial is equivalent to the three term recurrence relation satisfied by standard orthogonal polynomials, see [2]. On the other hand, some numerical implementation of the Christoffel formula has been analyzed in [8].

Define the following polynomials (kernel polynomials [3]):

\[
(1.6) \quad K_n(x_0, x) = \sum_{j=0}^{n} \overline{p_j(x_0)p_j(x)}, \quad x, x_0 \in \mathbb{C}, \quad n \in \mathbb{Z}_+.
\]

These polynomials have the following reproducing property (which follows directly from orthonormality relations \( (1.2) \)):

\[
(1.7) \quad \int_a^b K_n(t, x)\omega(t)d\alpha(t) = \omega(x),
\]

for any polynomial \( \omega(x) \), \( \deg \omega \leq n \). The following two results are proven in [13]:

**Theorem (1.8).** Let \( x_0 \) be an arbitrary complex number and \( \phi(x) \) be an arbitrary complex polynomial, \( \deg \phi \leq n \), normalized in the following way:

\[
(1.9) \quad \int_a^b |\phi(x)|^2d\alpha(x) = 1.
\]

The maximum of \( |\phi(x_0)|^2 \) is given by the polynomials

\[
(1.10) \quad \phi(x) = \varepsilon \left\{ K_n(x_0, x_0) \right\}^{-1/2} K_n(x_0, x), \quad |\varepsilon| = 1, \quad n \in \mathbb{Z}_+.
\]

The maximum itself is \( K_n(x_0, x_0) \).

**Theorem (1.11).** Let \( a \) and \( x_0 \) be finite and \( x_0 \leq a \). Then the polynomials \( \{K_n(x_0, x)\}_{n \in \mathbb{Z}_+} \) are orthogonal with respect to \( (x-x_0)\,d\alpha \).

For \( n \in \mathbb{N} \), we denote by \( \mathbb{C}_{n \times n} \) the set of all \( n \times n \) matrices with complex coefficients and by \( \mathbb{C}_{n \times n}^+ \) the set of all positive semi–definite Hermitian matrices from \( \mathbb{C}_{n \times n} \). The letter \( \mathbb{P} \) stands for the set of all complex polynomials. Let

\[
L_N = \{ \lambda \in \mathbb{C} : \lambda^N - \overline{\lambda}^N = 0 \} = \{ \lambda \in \mathbb{C} : \lambda^N \in \mathbb{R} \}, \quad N \in \mathbb{N}.
\]
It can easily be seen that $L_N$ is a set of $2N$ radial rays or a pencil of $N$ lines and

$$L_N = \bigcup_{k=0}^{2N-1} \{ x \hat{e}^k, x \geq 0 \} = \bigcup_{k=0}^{N-1} \{ x \hat{e}^k, x \in \mathbb{R} \},$$

where $\hat{e} = \cos \frac{\pi}{N} + i \sin \frac{\pi}{N}$ is a primitive root of unity of order $2N$. Set

$$L_{N,k} := \{ x \hat{e}^k, x \geq 0 \}, \quad k = 0, 1, \ldots, 2N - 1.$$

Let $M(\lambda)$ be a $\mathbb{C}^{N \times N}$-valued function on $L_N \setminus \{0\}$ which is non-decreasing on each ray $L_{N,k} \setminus \{0\}$, $k = 0, 1, \ldots, 2N - 1$, in the direction from 0 to $\infty$. This means that $M(\lambda_2) - M(\lambda_1) \geq 0$, if $\lambda_1, \lambda_2 \in L_{N,k} \setminus \{0\}$ and $|\lambda_2| \geq |\lambda_1| (k = 0, 1, \ldots, 2N - 1)$.

Suppose that the function $M(\lambda)$ satisfies

$$\int_{L_N} \left( \lambda^n, (\lambda \varepsilon)^n, (\lambda \varepsilon^2)^n, \ldots, (\lambda \varepsilon^{N-1})^n \right) dM(\lambda) \left( \begin{array}{c} \lambda^n \\ (\lambda \varepsilon)^n \\ \vdots \\ (\lambda \varepsilon^{N-1})^n \end{array} \right) < \infty, \ n \in \mathbb{Z}_+,$$

where $\varepsilon = \cos \frac{2\pi}{N} + i \sin \frac{2\pi}{N}$ is a primitive root of unity of order $N$. Here and in the sequel the integral over $L_N$ will be understood as a sum of integrals over each ray $L_{N,k}$, $k = 0, 1, \ldots, 2N - 1$. The integral over $L_{N,k}$ is understood as improper at zero, i.e.

$$\int_{L_{N,k}} \ldots = \lim_{\delta \to +0} \int_{L_{N,k} \setminus U_\delta(0)} \ldots,$$

where $U_\delta(0) = \{ \lambda \in \mathbb{C} : |\lambda| < \delta \}$.

Let $A \in \mathbb{C}_{N \times N}^\geq$. Define the following functional:

$$\sigma(u,v) = \int_{L_N} (u(\lambda), u(\lambda \varepsilon), u(\lambda \varepsilon^2), \ldots, u(\lambda \varepsilon^{N-1})) dM(\lambda) \left( \begin{array}{c} v(\lambda) \\ v(\lambda \varepsilon) \\ \vdots \\ v(\lambda \varepsilon^{N-1}) \end{array} \right) + (u(0), u'(0), u''(0), \ldots, u^{(N-1)}(0)) A \left( \begin{array}{c} v(0) \\ v'(0) \\ \vdots \\ v^{(N-1)}(0) \end{array} \right), \quad u,v \in \mathbb{P}.$$

It follows from (1.14) that it is well defined. The functional $\sigma$ is bilinear and it is not hard to see that

$$\sigma(\lambda^N u(\lambda), v(\lambda)) = \sigma(u(\lambda), \lambda^N v(\lambda)), \quad u,v \in \mathbb{P};$$

$$\overline{\sigma(u,v)} = \sigma(v,u), \quad u,v \in \mathbb{P};$$

$$\sigma(u,u) \geq 0, \quad u \in \mathbb{P}.$$

We assume that the functional $\sigma$ is positive definite in the usual sense:

$$\sigma(u,u) > 0,$$
for all non-zero \( u \in \mathbb{P} \).

Applying the Gram-Schmidt orthogonalization with respect to the functional \( \sigma \) for the sequence \( 1, \lambda, \lambda^2, \ldots, \lambda^n, \ldots \), we obtain a sequence of orthonormal polynomials \( \{p_n(\lambda)\}_{n=0}^\infty \) (\( p_n \) has degree \( n \) and a positive leading coefficient), that is,

\[
\int_{L_N} (p_n(\lambda), p_n(\lambda \epsilon), p_n(\lambda \epsilon^2), \ldots, p_n(\lambda \epsilon^{N-1}))dM(\lambda) = \begin{pmatrix} p_m(\lambda) \\ p_m(\lambda \epsilon) \\ \vdots \\ p_m(\lambda \epsilon^{N-1}) \end{pmatrix} = \delta_{n,m}, \quad n, m \in \mathbb{Z}_+.
\]

These polynomials satisfy the following recurrence relation:

\[
\sum_{j=1}^N (\alpha_{k-j,j} p_{k-j}(\lambda) + \alpha_{k,j} p_{k+j}(\lambda)) + \alpha_{k,0} p_k(\lambda) = \lambda^N p_k(\lambda), \quad k \in \mathbb{Z}_+,
\]

where \( \alpha_{m,n} \in \mathbb{C}, m, n \in \mathbb{Z}_+ \) such that \( \alpha_{m,N} > 0, \alpha_{m,0} \in \mathbb{R} \), and those \( \alpha_{m,n}, p_k \) which appear here with negative indices are equal to zero.

Systems of polynomials \( \{p_n(\lambda)\}_{n=0}^\infty \) which satisfy the recurrence relation (1.21) with real coefficients \( \alpha_{m,n} \) were first studied by Duran [4] in 1993, following a suggestion of Marcellán. Duran showed that the polynomials are orthogonal with respect to a bilinear functional \( B(\cdot, \cdot) \). He obtained an integral representation for the functional with some measure. In 1995, he showed in [5] that the measure can be chosen to be positive. In the same year, Duran and Van Assche studied the case of the complex coefficients in the relation (1.21), see [7]. From their results (see [7, Theorem]) it is easy to derive an integral representation of \( B \) in the general case. In 2003, the second author obtained another integral representation for the functional \( B \), see [15]. This representation is exactly (1.15). Thus, we can say that orthonormality relations (1.20) and difference relation (1.21) are equivalent.

Other properties of polynomials satisfying high–order recurrence relation (1.21) can be found in [6],[14],[10],[16]. For some properties of the corresponding kernel polynomials, see [5].

The aim of our present investigation is to extend the above mentioned results for the orthogonal polynomials on \([a, b]\) to the case of orthogonal polynomials on radial rays. As an application, we obtain explicit formulas for a new system of orthogonal polynomials.

Notations. Besides the definitions given above, we denote as usual the sets of real numbers, complex numbers, positive integers, integers and non–negative integers by \( \mathbb{R}, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{N}, \mathbb{Z}, \mathbb{Z}_+ \), respectively.
2. A generalization of Christoffel’s formula and auxiliary results

Let $M(\lambda)$ and $A$ be defined as in the introduction with the properties stated there. Let \( \{ p_n(\lambda) \}_{n=0}^\infty \) (\( p_n \) has degree \( n \) and a positive leading coefficient) be a sequence of orthonormal polynomials which satisfies (1.20). Consider an interval \([a, b]\), \(-\infty \leq a < b \leq +\infty\), such that

\[
\int_{L_N} (p(\lambda), p(\lambda \epsilon), p(\lambda \epsilon^2), \ldots, p(\lambda \epsilon^{N-1})) dM(\lambda) \begin{pmatrix}
q(\lambda) \\
q(\lambda \epsilon) \\
\vdots \\
q(\lambda \epsilon^{N-1})
\end{pmatrix}
\]

(2.1)

for all polynomials \( p, q \in \mathbb{P} \). In other words, we exclude, if possible, a part of the integral over \( L_N \) which has no influence on the functional \( \sigma(u, v) \).

Let \( \rho(x) \in \mathbb{P} \) be positive on \([a, b]\), where \( \deg \rho = l \), \( l \in \mathbb{N} \). Suppose that it can be written in the form (1.4) with \( c, x_j \in \mathbb{R} \), \( c \neq 0 \) and that its zeros are simple.

(2.2) \quad \rho(0) > 0.

Then we have

\[
\rho(\lambda^N) = c(\lambda^N - x_1)(\lambda^N - x_2) \ldots (\lambda^N - x_l) = c \prod_{j=1}^{l} \prod_{k=1}^{N}(\lambda - x_{j,k}),
\]

(2.3)

where

(2.4) \quad \lambda_j^N := \{x_j^N\}_{k=1}^N

is a set of all \( N \)-th roots \( \sqrt[\lambda]{\lambda_j^N}, j = 1, 2, \ldots, l \).

Set

(2.5) \quad D_n(\lambda) :=

\[
\begin{pmatrix}
p_n(\lambda) & p_{n+1}(\lambda) & \ldots & p_{n+N}(\lambda) \\
p_n(x_{1,1}) & p_{n+1}(x_{1,1}) & \ldots & p_{n+N}(x_{1,1}) \\
p_n(x_{1,2}) & p_{n+1}(x_{1,2}) & \ldots & p_{n+N}(x_{1,2}) \\
\vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\
p_n(x_{1,N}) & p_{n+1}(x_{1,N}) & \ldots & p_{n+N}(x_{1,N}) \\
p_n(x_{l,1}) & p_{n+1}(x_{l,1}) & \ldots & p_{n+N}(x_{l,1}) \\
p_n(x_{l,2}) & p_{n+1}(x_{l,2}) & \ldots & p_{n+N}(x_{l,2}) \\
\vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\
p_n(x_{l,N}) & p_{n+1}(x_{l,N}) & \ldots & p_{n+N}(x_{l,N})
\end{pmatrix}, \quad n \in \mathbb{Z}_+, \ \lambda \in \mathbb{C}.
\]
This yields

\[ Q_1 \neq 0 \quad \text{for an arbitrary} \quad \sigma \neq 0, \quad \text{such that} \]

\[ (2.8) \quad Q(\lambda) := \sum_{k=n}^{n+Nl-1} \xi_k p_k(\lambda) = 0, \quad \lambda \in \mathcal{X}_j, \quad j = 1, 2, \ldots, l. \]

This yields \( Q(\lambda) = \rho(\lambda^N)G(\lambda), \) where \( G(\lambda) \in \mathbb{P}, \ deg G \leq n - 1. \) Using the orthonormality of polynomials \( p_k \) and relation (2.8) we get

\[ \sigma(Q(\lambda), p_m(\lambda)) = 0, \quad m = 0, 1, \ldots, n - 1, \]

where \( \sigma(u,v) \) is the functional from Equation (1.15). Therefore \( \sigma(Q(\lambda), q(\lambda)) = 0, \) for an arbitrary \( q \in \mathbb{P} \) with \( \deg q \leq n - 1. \) In particular, we obtain

\[ \sigma(Q(\lambda), G(\lambda)) = \sigma(\rho(\lambda^N)G(\lambda), G(\lambda)) = 0. \]

This means that

\[ \int_{L_N} \rho(\lambda^N)(G(\lambda), G(\lambda^e), G(e^2), \ldots, G(e^{N-1}))dM(\lambda) \]

\[ (2.9) \quad \int_{L_N} + (\rho(\lambda^N)G(\lambda), (\rho(\lambda^N)G(\lambda))', \ldots, (\rho(\lambda^N)G(\lambda))^{(N-1)})A \left( \begin{array}{c} G(\lambda) \\ G'(\lambda) \\ \vdots \\ G^{(N-1)}(\lambda) \end{array} \right)_{\lambda=0} = 0. \]

Let \( \hat{A} \) denote the second term on the left hand side of (2.9). Suppose first that \( A \) is not the zero matrix. Then we can write

\[ (2.10) \quad \rho(\lambda^N) = c_0 + \lambda^N r(\lambda), \quad r \in \mathbb{P}. \]

Therefore

\[ \hat{A} = (c_0 G(\lambda), (c_0 G(\lambda))', \ldots, (c_0 G(\lambda))^{(N-1)})A \left( \begin{array}{c} G(\lambda) \\ G'(\lambda) \\ \vdots \\ G^{(N-1)}(\lambda) \end{array} \right)_{\lambda=0} \]
\begin{align}
&+ (\lambda^N r(\lambda) G(\lambda), (\lambda^N r(\lambda) G(\lambda))', \ldots, (\lambda^N r(\lambda) G(\lambda))^{(N-1)}) A \begin{pmatrix}
G(\lambda) \\
G'(\lambda) \\
\vdots \\
G^{(N-1)}(\lambda)
\end{pmatrix}_{\lambda=0} \\
= c_0(G(\lambda), G'(\lambda), \ldots, G^{(N-1)}(\lambda)) A \begin{pmatrix}
G(\lambda) \\
G'(\lambda) \\
\vdots \\
G^{(N-1)}(\lambda)
\end{pmatrix}_{\lambda=0}.
\end{align}

Note that $c_0 = \rho(0) > 0$, see (2.2). Since $A$ is a positive semi-definite Hermitian matrix, we obtain
\begin{align}
\hat{A} \geq 0.
\end{align}

The first term on the left hand side of (2.9) is also non-negative. Consequently, both terms on the left hand side of (2.9) are equal to zero. By virtue of (2.11) we get
\begin{align}
(G(\lambda), G'(\lambda), \ldots, G^{(N-1)}(\lambda)) A \begin{pmatrix}
G(\lambda) \\
G'(\lambda) \\
\vdots \\
G^{(N-1)}(\lambda)
\end{pmatrix}_{\lambda=0} = 0.
\end{align}

In the case $A = 0$, Equation (2.13) is trivial.

If the interval $[a, b]$ is finite, then, since $\rho(x)$ is continuous on $[a, b]$, there exists a point $x_m \in [a, b]$ such that
\begin{align}
\rho(x) \geq \rho(x_m) > 0, \quad x \in [a, b].
\end{align}

If $a = -\infty$ and/or $b = \infty$, we observe that $|\rho(x)| \to +\infty$, as $x \to \infty$. So we can say that in any case
\begin{align}
\rho(x) \geq m_0 > 0, \quad x \in [a, b],
\end{align}

holds. Consequently, we can write
\begin{align}
0 = \int_{L_N} \rho(\Lambda^N)(\lambda), (\lambda e), G(\lambda e^2), \ldots, G(\lambda e^{N-1}))dM(\lambda) \begin{pmatrix}
G(\lambda) \\
G(\lambda e) \\
\vdots \\
G(\lambda e^{N-1})
\end{pmatrix}
\end{align}

\begin{align}
\geq m_0 \int_{L_N} (G(\lambda), G(\lambda e), G(\lambda e^2), \ldots, G(\lambda e^{N-1}))dM(\lambda) \begin{pmatrix}
G(\lambda) \\
G(\lambda e) \\
\vdots \\
G(\lambda e^{N-1})
\end{pmatrix}.
\end{align}
Therefore
\begin{equation}
(2.16) \quad \int_{L_N} (G(\lambda), G(\lambda \varepsilon), G(\lambda \varepsilon^2), \ldots, G(\lambda \varepsilon^{N-1})) dM(\lambda) \begin{pmatrix}
G(\lambda) \\
G(\lambda \varepsilon) \\
\vdots \\
G(\lambda \varepsilon^{N-1})
\end{pmatrix} = 0.
\end{equation}

From relations (2.13),(2.16) it follows that \sigma(G(\lambda), G(\lambda)) = 0. Since \sigma \neq 0, we obtain a contradiction with relation (1.19). This completes the proof.

As a corollary of Lemma 2.7 we get that the polynomial \(D_n, n \in \mathbb{Z}_+\), has degree \(n + Nl\). Moreover, the numbers \(x_{j,k}, j = 1, 2, \ldots, l; k = 1, 2, \ldots, N\), are zeros of this polynomial. Hence, we have
\begin{equation}
(2.17) \quad D_n = \rho(\lambda^N)r_n(\lambda),
\end{equation}
where \(r_n(\lambda) \in \mathbb{P}\) with \(\deg r_n = n\). Using the definition of \(D_n\) we can write
\begin{equation}
(2.18) \quad D_n = \sum_{j=n}^{n+Nl} \xi_j p_j(\lambda), \quad \xi_j \in \mathbb{C}, \xi_{n+Nl} \neq 0.
\end{equation}

Using relations (2.18),(1.20) we write
\begin{equation}
(2.19) \quad 0 = \sigma \left( \sum_{j=n}^{n+Nl} \xi_j p_j(\lambda), t(\lambda) \right) = \sigma(D_n, t) = \sigma(\rho(\lambda^N)r_n(\lambda), t(\lambda)) = \sigma_p(r_n(\lambda), t(\lambda)),
\end{equation}
for an arbitrary \(t(\lambda) \in \mathbb{P}\): \(\deg t \leq n - 1\). Here we set
\begin{equation}
(2.20) \quad \sigma_p(u, v) := \sigma(\rho(\lambda^N)u, v)
\end{equation}

\begin{equation}
0 = \sigma \left( \int_{\{z \in \mathbb{C}: z^N \in [a,b]\}} (u(\lambda), u(\lambda \varepsilon), u(\lambda \varepsilon^2), \ldots, u(\lambda \varepsilon^{N-1})) \rho(\lambda^N) dM(\lambda) \begin{pmatrix}
u(\lambda) \\
u(\lambda \varepsilon) \\
\vdots \\
u(\lambda \varepsilon^{N-1})
\end{pmatrix} \right.
\begin{align*}
+ \rho(0)(u(0), u'(0), u''(0), \ldots, u^{(N-1)}(0)) \begin{pmatrix}
u(0) \\
u'(0) \\
\vdots \\
u^{(N-1)}(0)
\end{pmatrix} ,
\end{align*}
\end{equation}
where \(u, v \in \mathbb{P}\).

The functional \(\sigma_p\) is bilinear. It satisfies relations (1.16), (1.17) and (1.18). It is straightforward to see that (1.19) holds for the functional \(\sigma_p\). From relations (2.19) and (1.17) (for \(\sigma_p\)) we obtain
\begin{equation}
(2.21) \quad \sigma_p(r_n(\lambda), r_m(\lambda)) = 0, \quad n, m \in \mathbb{Z}_+, \quad n \neq m.
\end{equation}

Polynomials \(\{r_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{Z}_+}\), \(\deg r_n = n\), which satisfy the relation (2.21), are said to be orthonormal with respect to \(\sigma_p\).

Let \(\{t_n(\lambda)\}_{n=0}^\infty\) \((t_n\) has degree \(n\) and a positive leading coefficient) be orthonormal polynomials corresponding to the positive measure \(\rho(\lambda) dM(\lambda)\) and the matrix \(\rho(0)A\), which are constructed as in the introduction. We have
\begin{equation}
(2.22) \quad \sigma_p(t_n(\lambda), t_m(\lambda)) = \delta_{n,m}, \quad n, m \in \mathbb{Z}_+.
\end{equation}
We will call such polynomials \( \{t_n(\lambda)\}_{n=0}^{\infty} \) orthonormal with respect to \( \sigma_\rho \). If \( t_n(\lambda) = \mu_n \lambda^n + ...; \ r_n(\lambda) = \bar{\mu}_n \lambda^n + ... \), then \( \sigma_\rho \left( r_n - \bar{\mu}_n t_n, r_n - \bar{\mu}_n t_n \right) = 0 \).

By (1.19) we get \( r_n = \bar{\mu}_n t_n, \ n \in \mathbb{Z}_+ \). Thus, as in the case of orthogonal polynomials on \( \mathbb{R} \), the orthogonal polynomials \( \{r_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{Z}_+} \) differ by a constant factor from the orthonormal polynomials \( \{t_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{Z}_+} \).

In the case when \( \rho(x) \) has multiple zeros, one should replace the corresponding rows in the determinants (2.5) and (2.6) by rows with derivatives of order \( L \) and \( N \), respectively.

Example. Let \( \rho(\lambda) \) be the corresponding bilinear functional (1.15) and let it be given as in (1.4) with \( c, x_j \in \mathbb{R}, c \neq 0 \). If \( A \) is not the zero matrix, we assume that \( \rho(0) > 0 \).

Define polynomials \( D_n(\lambda) \) on \( \mathbb{R} \), according to (2.5). For a multiple zero of \( \rho(\lambda^N) \) of order \( m \) we replace the corresponding row in the determinant (2.5) by the polynomials (1.20).

Then the polynomials \( \{r_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{Z}_+} \) are orthogonal with respect to \( \sigma_\rho \).

Theorem (2.23). Let \( A \in \mathbb{C}_{N \times N}^\geq \) and \( M(\lambda) \) be a \( \mathbb{C}_{N \times N} \)-valued function on \( L_N \setminus \{0\} \) which is non-decreasing on each ray \( L_{N,k} \setminus \{0\}, \ k = 0, 1, \ldots, 2N - 1 \), in the direction from 0 to \( \infty \). Suppose that the function \( M(\lambda) \) has all finite moments (1.14). Define the functional \( \sigma(u, v) \), \( u, v \in \mathbb{P} \), as in (1.15) and suppose that it satisfies relation (1.19). Let \( \{p_n(\lambda)\}_{n=0}^{\infty} \) (\( p_n \) has degree \( n \) and a positive leading coefficient) be the corresponding sequence of orthonormal polynomials (1.20).

Choose an interval \([a, b], -\infty \leq a < b \leq +\infty \), such that relation (2.1) holds. Let \( \rho(x) \in \mathbb{P}, \deg p = l, \ l \in \mathbb{N} \), be positive on \([a, b]\) and let it be given as in (1.4) with \( c, x_j \in \mathbb{R}, c \neq 0 \). If \( A \) is not the zero matrix, we assume that \( \rho(0) > 0 \).

Define polynomials \( D_n(\lambda^N) \) on \([a, b]\), according to (2.5). For a multiple zero of \( \rho(\lambda^N) \) of order \( m \) we replace the corresponding row in the determinant (2.5) by the polynomials (1.20) with the polynomials (2.5).

Then the polynomials \( \{r_n\}_{n \in \mathbb{Z}_+} \), deg \( r_n = n \), are monic polynomials (\( \rho_n(\lambda) = \lambda^n + \ldots \)) such that

\[
\sigma(\overline{p}_n(\lambda), \overline{p}_m(\lambda)) = \int_{-1}^{1} \overline{p}_n(\lambda)\overline{p}_m(\lambda)d\lambda + \int_{-i}^{i} \overline{p}_n(\lambda)\overline{p}_m(\lambda)d\lambda = A_n \delta_{n,m},
\]
where $A_n > 0$, $n, m \in \mathbb{Z}_+$. Such polynomials were studied by Milovanović in [11]. If we apply Lemma 6.2 and Theorem 6.5 in [11], we obtain
\begin{equation}
\rho \quad (2.25)
\end{equation}
and the polynomials $q_k(x)$ are monic orthogonal polynomials on $[0, 1]$ with respect to the weight $x^{2n-1}$.

Let $(\tilde{P}_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x))_{n \in \mathbb{Z}}$ be the monic Jacobi polynomials. The Jacobi polynomials are orthogonal in the interval $[-1, 1]$ with respect to the weight function $(1 - x)^{\alpha + \beta}$. The standard Rodrigues formula for Jacobi monic polynomials has the following form ([12, p. 271]):
\begin{equation}
\tilde{P}_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x) = \frac{(-1)^n \Gamma(\alpha + \beta + n + 1)}{\Gamma(\alpha + \beta + 2n + 1)(1 - x)^{\alpha + n}(1 + x)^{\beta + n}} \left[ (1 - x)^{\alpha + n}(1 + x)^{\beta + n} \right]^{(n)} , \quad n \in \mathbb{Z}.
\end{equation}
Here $\Gamma(a) = \int_0^\infty t^{a-1}e^{-t}dt$, $a > 0$, is the Euler’s gamma function.

Using a change of variable, we see that the polynomials $(\{\frac{1}{n!} \tilde{P}_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(2x-1)\})_{n \in \mathbb{Z}}$ are monic orthogonal polynomials on $[0, 1]$ with respect to $(1 - x)^{\alpha}x^{\beta}$. Hence, we get
\begin{equation}
q_n^{(\nu)}(x) = \frac{1}{2^n} \tilde{P}_n^{(0, \frac{2\nu - 1}{2})}(2x - 1), \quad \nu = 0, 1, 2, 3, \quad n \in \mathbb{Z}.
\end{equation}
Thus we obtain
\begin{equation}
\tilde{p}_{k+\nu}(z) = \frac{1}{2^n} z^{\nu} \tilde{P}_k^{(0, \frac{2\nu - 1}{2})}(2z^4 - 1), \quad \nu = 0, 1, 2, 3, \quad k \in \mathbb{Z}.
\end{equation}
Denote
\begin{equation}
\|p\| := \sqrt{\sigma(p, p)}, \quad p \in \mathbb{P}.
\end{equation}
Note that
\begin{equation}
p_n(\lambda) = \frac{\tilde{p}_n}{\|\tilde{p}_n\|}, \quad n \in \mathbb{Z}.
\end{equation}
In fact, orthonormal polynomials with positive leading coefficients are unique (see the reasoning about polynomials $r_n$ and $t_n$ above).

In [11, p. 132] it was shown that
\begin{equation}
\|\tilde{p}_n\|^2 = \frac{4}{2n + 1}, \quad n = 0, 1, 2, 3;
\end{equation}
\begin{equation}
\|\tilde{p}_n\|^2 = \|\tilde{p}_{k+\nu}\|^2 = \frac{4}{8n + 2\nu + 1} \left( \prod_{k=\nu}^{2n-1} \frac{4(k - n + 1)}{4k + 2\nu + 1} \right)^2, \quad n \geq 4.
\end{equation}
So, we have explicit formulas for the polynomials $p_n(\lambda)$.

Now we shall derive explicit formulas for a new system of orthogonal polynomials. In order to use Theorem 2.23 we take $[a, b] = [-1, 1]$. Choose $\rho(x) = x + c$, $c > 1$. The polynomial $\rho(x)$ is positive on $[-1, 1]$ and $\rho(\lambda^2) = \lambda^2 + c = (\lambda + i\sqrt{c})(\lambda - i\sqrt{c})$. Hence, the determinants $D_n$ in (2.5) will take the following form:
\begin{equation}
D_n = \left| \begin{array}{ccc}
p_n(\lambda) & p_{n+1}(\lambda) & p_{n+2}(\lambda) \\
p_n(i\sqrt{c}) & p_{n+1}(i\sqrt{c}) & p_{n+2}(i\sqrt{c}) \\
p_n(-i\sqrt{c}) & p_{n+1}(-i\sqrt{c}) & p_{n+2}(-i\sqrt{c}) \end{array} \right|, \quad n \in \mathbb{Z}.
\end{equation}
Consequently, the orthogonal polynomials \( \{r_n(\lambda)\}_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} \) corresponding to \( M_1(\lambda) \) such that \( dM_1(\lambda) = (\lambda^2 + c) dM(\lambda) \) have the following form

\[
(2.33) \quad r_n(\lambda) = \frac{1}{\lambda^2 + c} \begin{vmatrix} p_n(\lambda) & p_{n+1}(\lambda) & p_{n+2}(\lambda) \\ p_n(i \sqrt{c}) & p_{n+1}(i \sqrt{c}) & p_{n+2}(i \sqrt{c}) \\ p_n(-i \sqrt{c}) & p_{n+1}(-i \sqrt{c}) & p_{n+2}(-i \sqrt{c}) \end{vmatrix}, \quad n \in \mathbb{Z}^+.
\]

3. Some generalizations of kernel polynomials

In this section we generalize the results on kernel polynomials mentioned in the introduction. Let \( M(\lambda) \) and \( A \) be as explained in the introduction and let \( \{p_n(\lambda)\}_{n=0}^\infty \) (\( p_n \) has degree \( n \) and a positive leading coefficient) be a sequence of orthonormal polynomials which satisfies (1.20). Let \( \sigma \) be the bilinear functional (1.15). Set

\[
(3.1) \quad \tilde{K}_n(x, y) = \sum_{j=0}^n p_j(x)p_j(y), \quad n \in \mathbb{Z}^+.
\]

These polynomials were studied in [5] where in particular, some asymptotic formulas were obtained.

The orthogonality relations imply immediately the following reproducing property:

\[
(3.2) \quad \sigma_t(P(t), \tilde{K}_n(t, \lambda)) = P(\lambda), \quad P \in \mathbb{P}: \deg P \leq n.
\]

Here \( \sigma_t \) means that \( \sigma \) acts on polynomials in the variable \( t \).

**Theorem (3.3).** Let \( \lambda_0 \) be an arbitrary complex value and let \( P(\lambda) \in \mathbb{P} \) be such that

\[
(3.4) \quad \sigma(P, P) = 1.
\]

The maximum value of \( \|P(\lambda_0)\|^2 \) is attained for polynomials

\[
(3.5) \quad P(\lambda) = \varepsilon \{\tilde{K}_n(\lambda_0, \lambda_0)\}^{-1} \tilde{K}_n(\lambda, \lambda_0), \quad |\varepsilon| = 1.
\]

The maximum value is \( \tilde{K}_n(\lambda_0, \lambda_0) \).

To prove the theorem one needs only to repeat the arguments from the classical proof.

Polynomials \( \{q_n(\lambda)\}_{n=0}^\infty \), \( \deg q_n = n \), are said to be \( N \)-orthogonal with respect to the functional \( \sigma \) if

\[
(3.6) \quad \sigma(q_n, q_m) = 0, \quad n, m \in \mathbb{Z}^+: |n - m| \geq N.
\]

Note that in the case \( N = 2 \), we obtain the quasi-orthogonal polynomials \( q_n \) is a quasi-orthogonal polynomial of order \( n \), see [3, Chapter II.5]).

**Theorem (3.7).** Suppose that relation (2.1) is true for a finite \( [a, b] \subset \mathbb{R} \). Let \( x_0 > \max(|a|, |b|) \). Then the polynomials \( \{\tilde{K}_n(\lambda, \sqrt[N]{x_0})\}_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} \) are \( N \)-orthogonal with respect to the functional \( \tilde{\sigma} \) defined by \( (x_0 - \lambda^N)dM(\lambda) \) instead of \( dM(\lambda) \), and the matrix \( A \).
Proof. By inserting $P(t) = (x_0 - t^N)P_{n-N}(t)$, $\deg P_{n-N} \leq n - N$, and $\lambda = \sqrt[N]{x_0} > 0$ in (3.2), we obtain

$$0 = \sigma_t((x_0 - t^N)P_{n-N}(t), \tilde{K}_n(t, \sqrt[N]{x_0})) = \sigma_t(P_{n-N}(t), \tilde{K}_n(t, \sqrt[N]{x_0})),$$

where $\sigma_t$ corresponds to the matrix function $(x_0 - \lambda^N)M(\lambda)$. From the latter relation it follows that polynomials $\tilde{K}_n(t, \sqrt[N]{x_0})$ are $N$-orthogonal.

The following proposition also shows that $N$-orthogonal polynomials are some generalizations of quasi-orthogonal polynomials (see [1]).

**Proposition (3.9).** Let polynomials $\{\tilde{q}_n(\lambda)\}_{n=0}^\infty$, $\deg \tilde{q}_n = n$, be given. They are $N$-orthogonal with respect to the functional $\sigma$ if and only if they have the following form

$$\tilde{q}_n(\lambda) = \sum_{j=n-N+1}^{n} a_{n,j}p_j(\lambda), \quad a_{n,j} \in \mathbb{C}, \quad a_{n,n} \neq 0, \quad n \in \mathbb{Z}_+.$$

By convention, polynomials with negative indices will be zero.

The proof is straightforward using the orthogonality of $\{p_n(x)\}_{n=0}^\infty$.

### 4. Relations between the recursion coefficients

We shall establish some relations between the recursion coefficients of the original polynomials $\{p_n(\lambda)\}_{n=0}^\infty$ in Theorem 2.23 and the the recursion coefficients of the polynomials $\{r_n(\lambda)\}_{n=0}^\infty$ corresponding to the perturbed measure.

First we obtain relations between the coefficients of the polynomials $\{p_n(\lambda)\}_{n=0}^\infty$ satisfying (1.21) and their recursion coefficients. Assume that the polynomial $p_k(\lambda)$ has the following form:

$$p_k(\lambda) = \sum_{j=0}^{k} \mu_{k,j} \lambda^j, \quad \mu_{k,j} \in \mathbb{C}, \quad \mu_{k,k} > 0, \quad k \in \mathbb{Z}_+.$$

Comparing the coefficients of the term $\lambda^{k+N-b}$, $0 \leq b \leq N$, on the both sides of the recurrence relation (1.21) gives

$$\sum_{j=N-b}^{N} \alpha_{k,j} \mu_{k+j,k+N-b} = \mu_{k,k-b},$$

where, by convention, $\mu_{i,j}$ with negative indices are zero. From the latter relation we get

$$\alpha_{k,N} = \frac{\mu_{k,k}}{\mu_{k+N,k+N}},$$

$$\alpha_{k,N-b} = \frac{1}{\mu_{k+N-b,k+N-b}} \left( \mu_{k,k-b} - \sum_{j=N-b+1}^{N} \alpha_{k,j} \mu_{k+j,k+N-b} \right), \quad b = 1, 2, ..., N.$$

On the other hand, from relation (4.2) it follows that

$$\mu_{k+N,k+N} = \frac{1}{\alpha_{k,N}} \mu_{k,k};$$
We set
\[ c_{i,j} := \mu_{i,j}, \quad i = 0, \ldots, N - 1; \quad 0 \leq j \leq i. \]

From (4.4), (4.5) one can define coefficients \( \mu_{k,j}, k, j \in \mathbb{Z}_+ \) with \( k - N \leq j \leq k \), depending only on the coefficients \( \alpha_{k,j} \) and the constants \( c_{i,j}, i = 0, \ldots, N - 1; \quad 0 \leq j \leq i \). These are not all coefficients \( \mu_{k,j} \), but that is enough for our further purposes.

We introduce some additional notation. Set
\[ A_j = (p_j(x_{i,1}), p_j(x_{i,2}), \ldots, p_j(x_{i,N}), \ldots, p_j(x_{i,1}), p_j(x_{i,2}), \ldots, p_j(x_{i,N})), j \in \mathbb{Z}_+, \]

where the superscript \( T \) means the transpose of a matrix. We also set
\[ d_{n,j} = \det D_{n,j}, \quad n \in \mathbb{Z}_+, \quad 0 \leq j \leq Nl, \]

where \( D_{n,j} \) is obtained from the rectangular matrix \( (A_n, A_{n+1}, \ldots, A_{n+Nl}) \) by removing the column \( A_{n+j} \). Note that
\[ d_{n,Nl} = d_n, \quad d_{n,0} = d_{n+1}, \]

where \( d_n \) are given in (2.6).

For the polynomials \( \{r_n(\lambda)\}_{n=0}^{\infty} \), relation (1.21) reads
\[ \sum_{j=1}^{N} (\hat{\alpha}_{k-j} r_{k-j}(\lambda) + \hat{\alpha}_{k,j} r_{k+j}(\lambda)) + \hat{\alpha}_{k,0} r_k(\lambda) = \lambda^N r_k(\lambda), \quad k \in \mathbb{Z}_+, \]

where \( \hat{\alpha}_{m,n} \in \mathbb{C}, m, n \in \mathbb{Z}_+ \) with \( \hat{\alpha}_{m,N} > 0, \hat{\alpha}_{m,0} \in \mathbb{R}, \) and all \( \hat{\alpha}_{m,n} \), \( r_k \) with negative indices are equal to zero. Using the definition of the polynomials \( r_n(\lambda) \) we get
\[ \sum_{j=1}^{N} (\hat{\alpha}_{k-j} D_{k-j}(\lambda) + \hat{\alpha}_{k,j} D_{k+j}(\lambda)) + \hat{\alpha}_{k,0} D_k(\lambda) = \lambda^N D_k(\lambda), \quad k \in \mathbb{Z}_+. \]

From the definition of the polynomials \( D_n(\lambda) \) it follows that
\[ \sum_{j=1}^{N} \hat{\alpha}_{k-j} \begin{vmatrix} p_{k-j}(\lambda) & p_{k-j+1}(\lambda) & \cdots & p_{k-j+Nl}(\lambda) \\ A_{k-j} & A_{k-j+1} & \cdots & A_{k-j+Nl} \end{vmatrix} \]
\[ + \sum_{j=0}^{N} \hat{\alpha}_{k,j} \begin{vmatrix} p_{k+j}(\lambda) & p_{k+j+1}(\lambda) & \cdots & p_{k+j+Nl}(\lambda) \\ A_{k+j} & A_{k+j+1} & \cdots & A_{k+j+Nl} \end{vmatrix} \]
\[ = \lambda^N \begin{vmatrix} p_k(\lambda) & p_{k+1}(\lambda) & \cdots & p_{k+Nl}(\lambda) \\ A_k & A_{k+1} & \cdots & A_{k+Nl} \end{vmatrix}, \quad k \in \mathbb{Z}_+. \]

We shall compare the coefficients of the \( \lambda^{k+Nl+N-s}, 0 \leq s \leq N, \) on both sides of the relation (4.8). Note that the first sum on the left hand side of (4.8) has no such terms. In the second sum, summands with \( j \) such that \( k + j + Nl < k + Nl + N - s, \) have also no such terms. So, it is sufficient to consider summands with \( j \) such that \( N - s \leq j \leq N \).
Consider the summand with the index \( j = N - s + v, 0 \leq v \leq s \):

\[
\hat{\alpha}_{k,N-s+v} \begin{pmatrix}
p_{k+N-s+v}(\lambda) & p_{k+N-s+v+1}(\lambda) & \cdots & p_{k+N-s+v+Nl}(\lambda)
\end{pmatrix} = \\
\hat{\alpha}_{k,N-s+v} \sum_{c=0}^{NL} (-1)^c p_{k+N-s+v+c}(\lambda)d_{k+N-s+v,c}.
\]

(4.9)

Note that if \( k + N - s + v + c < k + NL + N - s \), then the summand of the last sum with the index \( c \) has no required terms. Therefore it is enough to consider summands with \( c \geq NL - v \):

\[
\hat{\alpha}_{k,N-s+v} \sum_{c=NL-v}^{NL} (-1)^c p_{k+N-s+v+c}(\lambda)d_{k+N-s+v,c}.
\]

(4.10)

Thus, the coefficient by \( \lambda^{k+NL-N-s} \) in the summand with the index \( j = N - s + v \) is

\[
\hat{\alpha}_{k,N-s+v} \sum_{c=NL-v}^{NL} (-1)^c \mu_{k+N-s+v+c,k+NL+N-s}d_{k+N-s+v,c}.
\]

(4.11)

Consequently, the coefficient by \( \lambda^{k+NL+N-s} \) on the left hand side of the relation (4.8) is

\[
L := \sum_{v=0}^{s} \sum_{c=NL-v}^{NL} (-1)^c \mu_{k+N-s+v+c,k+NL+N-s}d_{k+N-s+v,c}.
\]

(4.12)

The right-hand side of the (4.8) is equal to

\[
\lambda^N \sum_{c=0}^{NL} (-1)^c p_{k+c}(\lambda)d_{k,c}.
\]

(4.13)

For indices \( c \) such that \( N + k + c < k + NL + N - s \), the summands of the last sum have no terms with \( \lambda^{k+NL+N-s} \). So, it is sufficient to consider the sum

\[
\lambda^N \sum_{c=NL-s}^{NL} (-1)^c \mu_{k+c,k+NL-s}d_{k,c}.
\]

(4.14)

Thus, the coefficient by \( \lambda^{k+NL+N-s} \) on the right-hand side of the relation (4.8) is

\[
R := \sum_{c=NL-s}^{NL} (-1)^c \mu_{k+c,k+NL-s}d_{k,c},
\]

(4.15)

where all \( \mu_{i,j} \) with negative indices are equal to zero. Comparing relations (4.12) and (4.15) we obtain

\[
\sum_{v=0}^{s} \sum_{c=NL-v}^{NL} (-1)^c \mu_{k+N-s+v+c,k+NL+N-s}d_{k+N-s+v,c} = \sum_{c=NL-s}^{NL} (-1)^c \mu_{k+c,k+NL-s}d_{k,c}, 0 \leq s \leq N.
\]

(4.16)
From this equality, we get the following theorem.

**Theorem (4.17).** Let \( \{ p_n(\lambda) \}_n \) and \( \{ r_n(\lambda) \}_n \) be the sequences of orthonormal polynomials defined as in Theorem 2.23. The coefficients of the recurrence relation (4.7) for the polynomials \( r_n(\lambda) \) can be deduced from the following relations:

\[
\hat{\alpha}_{k,N} = \frac{\mu_{k+Nl,k+Nl}d_k}{\mu_{k+Nl+N,k+Nl+N}d_{k+N}} = \alpha_{k+Nl,N} \frac{d_k}{d_{k+N}},
\]

(4.18)

\[
\hat{\alpha}_{k,N-s} = \frac{(-1)^{Nl}}{\mu_{N(l+1)+k-s,N(l+1)+k-s}d_{k+N-s}} \left( \sum_{c=NL-s}^{NL} (-1)^c \mu_{k+c,k+Nl-s}d_{k,c} \right)
\]

(4.19)

\[
-\sum_{v=1}^{s} \hat{\alpha}_{k,N-s+v} \sum_{c=NL-v}^{NL} (-1)^c \mu_{k+N-s+v+c,k+Nl-N}d_{k+N-s+v,c}, \quad 1 \leq s \leq N.
\]

The coefficients \( \mu_{i,j} \) in relation (4.19) can be obtained from (4.4) and (4.5).

**Acknowledgments**

The authors thank the referees for their valuable comments and suggestions. The authors are especially grateful to the referee who suggested the study of relations between the original and the perturbed polynomials in the generalized Christoffel formula (2.5).

*Received August 1, 2008*

*Final version received May 13, 2009*

**Abdon Eddy Choque Rivero**

Instituto de Física y Matemáticas, Universidad Michoacana de

San Nicolás de Hidalgo, Ciudad Universitaria, Morelia, Mich., C.P. 58048, México

abdon@ifm.umich.mx

**Sergey M. Zagorodnyuk**

School of Mathematics and Mechanics

Karazin Kharkiv National University

Kharkiv, 61077

Ukraine

Sergey.M.Zagorodnyuk@univer.kharkov.ua

**References**


ROTUNDITY AND CONNECTEDNESS IN TWO DIMENSIONS

FRANCISCO JAVIER GARCÍA-PACHECO

ABSTRACT. The main result in this paper assures that if $X$ is a 2-dimensional real Banach space then $X$ is rotund if and only if every closed, connected subset of $S_X$ is of the form $B_X (x, r) \cap S_X$.

1. Introduction

Rotund spaces are exactly those Banach spaces whose unit sphere does not contain non-trivial segments. It is well known and actually easy to check that rotundity is a 2-dimensional property, that is, a Banach space is rotund if and only if all of its 2-dimensional subspaces are rotund. Therefore, in order to characterize this property, it is sufficient to look at the 2-dimensional subspaces. In this paper, we present a topological characterization of rotundity in terms of connectedness in 2-dimensional real Banach spaces. Almost any book on geometry of Banach spaces is an appropriate reference for this property. In particular, we refer the reader to [JD] for a wide perspective on this topic.

It is convenient to explain the notation used in this paper even though it is rather usual. Let $X$ denote a Banach space. We have that $B_X$, $U_X$, and $S_X$ denote, respectively, the closed unit ball of $X$, the open unit ball of $X$, and the unit sphere of $X$. In the same manner, if $x$ is a vector of $X$ and $r$ is a non-negative real number, then $B_X (x, r)$, $U_X (x, r)$, and $S_X (x, r)$ denote the closed unit ball of center $x$ and radius $r$, the open unit ball of center $x$ and radius $r$, and the unit sphere of center $x$ and radius $r$, respectively. Also, if $X$ denotes a topological space and $A$ is a subset of $X$, then $\text{int} (A)$, $\text{bd} (A)$, and $\text{cl} (A)$ will denote, respectively, the interior of $A$, the boundary of $A$, and the closure of $A$. In the same way, if $B$ is a subset of $A$, then $\text{int}_A (B)$, $\text{bd}_A (B)$, and $\text{cl}_A (B)$ will denote (respectively) the interior of $B$ with respect to $A$, the boundary of $B$ with respect to $A$, and the closure of $B$ with respect to $A$.

2. Background

Along this manuscript we will rely upon some well known facts and theorems that we will state without proofs in this section.

FACT (2.1). Let $X$ be a 2-dimensional real Banach space. Then, the mapping

$$
\begin{align*}
S_X & \rightarrow S_{\ell^2} \\
x & \mapsto x / \|x\|_2
\end{align*}
$$

is a homeomorphism.

2000 Mathematics Subject Classification: Primary 46B04, 46B20.
Keywords and phrases: 2-dimensional real Banach space, rotundity, connectedness.
FACT (2.2). Let $X$ be a real Banach space. Then for every $x \in S_X$ we have that $S_X \setminus \{x\}$ is homeomorphic to a hyperplane of $X$.

THEOREM (2.3). Let $X$ be a 2-dimensional real Banach space. Then:

1. For any $a \neq b \in S_X$, the set $S_X \setminus \{a, b\}$ has exactly two connected components.
2. For every closed, connected subset $C$ of $S_X$ such that $\text{diam}(C) > 0$ and $C \neq S_X$, there exist two different points $a, b \in S_X$ satisfying $\text{bd}_{S_X}(C) = \{a, b\}$. Furthermore, $C \setminus \{a, b\}$ and $S_X \setminus C$ are the two connected components of $S_X \setminus \{a, b\}$.
3. If $C$ and $D$ are two closed, connected subsets of $S_X$ such that $\text{bd}_{S_X}(C) = \text{bd}_{S_X}(D)$ and $\text{int}_{S_X}(C) \cap \text{int}_{S_X}(D) \neq \emptyset$, then $C = D$.
4. If $U$ and $V$ are two open, connected subsets of $S_X$ such that $\text{bd}_{S_X}(U) = \text{bd}_{S_X}(V)$ and $U \cap V \neq \emptyset$, then $U = V$.

THEOREM (2.4). Let $X$ be a 2-dimensional real Banach space. Let $a \neq b \in S_X$. Then:

1. If $a = -b$, then $f^{-1}((0, +\infty)) \cap S_X$ and $f^{-1}((−\infty, 0)) \cap S_X$ are the two connected components of $S_X \setminus \{a, b\}$, where $f \in X^*$ is such that $f(a) = 0$. Note that each of these components is the opposite of the other.
2. If $a \neq -b$, then $f^{-1}((−\infty, 1)) \cap S_X$ and
   
   $$f^{-1}((1, +\infty)) \cap S_X = \left\{ \frac{ta + (1-t)b}{\|ta + (1-t)b\|} : t \in (0, 1) \right\}$$

   are the two connected components of $S_X \setminus \{a, b\}$, where $f \in X^*$ is the only functional such that $f(a) = f(b) = 1$. Note that the opposite of the second component is contained in the first one.

3. Connectedness in the unit sphere

   Our first aim is to study the connectedness of the sets $B_X(x, r) \cap S_X$, $U_X(x, r) \cap S_X$, and $S_X(x, r) \cap S_X$, where $X$ is a 2-dimensional real Banach space, $x \in S_X$, and $r \geq 0$. In order to do that, we will need the following key lemma.

   LEMMA (3.1). Let $X$ be a real Banach space. Let $x, y \in S_X$ such that $x \neq -y$. Then

   $$\left\| \frac{tx + (1-t)y}{\|tx + (1-t)y\|} - x \right\| \leq \|y - x\|$$

   for every $t \in [0, 1]$. Moreover, if there exists $t \in (0, 1)$ such that

   $$\left\| \frac{tx + (1-t)y}{\|tx + (1-t)y\|} - x \right\| = \|y - x\|,$$

   then the segment $[y, \frac{tx + (1-t)y}{\|tx + (1-t)y\|}]$ lies on the unit sphere.

   Proof. First, fix $t \in [0, 1]$ and note that

   $$1 - \|tx + (1-t)y\| = \|y\| - \|tx + (1-t)y\|$$

   $$\leq \|y - (tx + (1-t)y)\| = t\|y - x\|.$$
Let us denote $tx + (1 - t)y$ by $z_t$. We have that
\[ \|z_t\| - \|x\| \leq (1 - t)\|y - x\| + t\|y - x\| = \|y - x\|. \]

Secondly, assume that $t \in (0, 1)$ is such that
\[ \|tx + (1 - t)y\| - \|z_t\| = \|y - x\|. \]
Then, $t\|y - x\| = 1 - \|tx + (1 - t)y\|$. Let us see that
\[ \left\| \frac{1}{2}y + \frac{1}{2}tx + (1 - t)y \right\| = 1. \]
Observe that it suffices to show that
\[ \| (1 - t\|y - x\|) y + (tx + (1 - t)y) \| \geq 2 (1 - t\|y - x\|), \]
which is clearly true, since
\[ \| (1 - t\|y - x\|) y + (tx + (1 - t)y) \| = \| t(x - y) + (2 - t\|y - x\|) y \| \]
\[ \geq (2 - t\|y - x\|) - t\|y - x\| \]
\[ = 2 (1 - t\|y - x\|). \]

With the help of the previous lemma we will prove the following two propositions.

**Proposition (3.2).** Let $X$ be a real Banach space. Let $x \in S_X$ and $r \geq 0$. Then
1. If $r = 0$, then $B_X(x, r) \cap S_X = \{x\}$.
2. If $0 < r < 2$, then $B_X(x, r) \cap S_X$ is path-connected.
3. If $r \geq 2$, then $B_X(x, r) \cap S_X = S_X$.

**Proof.** We spare the details of the proof of (1) and (3) to the reader. With respect to (2), bearing Lemma 3.1 in mind, the only aspect we have to take into account is that if $y \in B_X(x, r) \cap S_X$, then $y \neq -x$. \qed

**Proposition (3.3).** Let $X$ be a real Banach space. Let $x \in S_X$ and $r \geq 0$. Then:
1. If $r = 0$, then $U_X(x, r) \cap S_X = \varnothing$.
2. If $0 < r \leq 2$, then $U_X(x, r) \cap S_X$ is path-connected.
3. If $r > 2$, then $U_X(x, r) \cap S_X = S_X$.

**Proof.** Again, note that (1) and (3) do not require any proof. As to (2), we can make use of the same idea as in the proof of the previous proposition, that is, we keep in mind Lemma 3.1 and note that if $y \in U_X(x, r) \cap S_X$, then $y \neq -x$. \qed
The previous two propositions motivate the following questions.

**Question** (3.4). Let $X$ be a 2-dimensional real Banach space. Then:

1. If $C$ is a closed, connected subset of $S_X$, then do there exist $x \in S_X$ and $r \geq 0$ such that $C = B_X(x,r) \cap S_X$?
2. If $U$ is an open, connected subset of $S_X$, then do there exist $x \in S_X$ and $r \geq 0$ such that $U = U_X(x,r) \cap S_X$?

The next example reveals that the answer to the previous questions is negative.

**Example** (3.5).

1. The closed, connected subset $C := \{(x,1) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : 0 \leq x \leq 1\} \cup \{(1,y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : -1 \leq y \leq 1\}$ of $S_{\ell^\infty}$ is not of the form $B_{\ell^\infty}(x,r) \cap S_X$ for any $x \in S_{\ell^\infty}$ and $r \geq 0$.
2. The open, connected subset $U := \{(x,1) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : 0 < x \leq 1\} \cup \{(1,y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : -1 < y \leq 1\}$ of $S_{\ell^\infty}$ is not of the form $U_{\ell^\infty}(x,r) \cap S_X$ for any $x \in S_{\ell^\infty}$ and $r \geq 0$.

Notice that $\ell^\infty$ is not rotund. Later on, we will see that in rotund 2-dimensional real Banach spaces, the connected subsets of the unit sphere are always given by intersection of balls with the unit sphere.

**Proposition** (3.6). Let $X$ be a real Banach space. Let $x \in S_X$ and $r \geq 0$. Then:

1. If $r = 0$, then $S_X(x,r) \cap S_X = \{x\}$.
2. If $0 < r < 2$, then
   
   (a) if $X$ has dimension 1, then $S_X(x,r) \cap S_X = \emptyset$;
   (b) if $X$ has dimension 2, then $S_X(x,r) \cap S_X$ has exactly two path-connected components which are segments;
   (c) if $X$ has dimension $\geq 3$, then $S_X(x,r) \cap S_X$ is path-connected.
3. If $r = 2$, then
   
   $S_X(x,r) \cap S_X = \bigcup \left\{ f^{-1}\left(\{1\}\right) \cap B_X : f \in S_X^*, f(-x) = 1 \right\}$.

   In case $S_X(x,r) \cap S_X$ is convex, there exists $f \in S_X^*$ such that $S_X(x,2) \cap S_X = f^{-1}\left(\{1\}\right) \cap B_X$.

4. If $r > 2$, then $S_X(x,r) \cap S_X = \emptyset$.

**Proof.** Note once again that (1) and (4) do not require any proof. Let us prove (3). Take any $y \in S_X(x,r) \cap S_X$. Then

$$\left\| \frac{y + (-x)}{2} \right\| = 1.$$ 

By the Hahn-Banach Theorem, there exists $f \in S_X^*$ such that

$$f\left(\frac{y + (-x)}{2}\right) = 1.$$
It is clear that \( f(y) = f(-x) = 1 \). Now, take any \( y \in f^{-1}\{1\} \cap B_X \) for some \( f \in S_X \) with \( f(-x) = 1 \). Then
\[
2 = f(y - x) \leq \|y - x\| \leq 2.
\]

Suppose now that \( S_X(x, r) \cap S_X \) is convex. By applying again the Hahn-Banach Theorem, we can find \( f \in S_X \) such that \( S_X(x, 2) \cap S_X \subseteq f^{-1}\{1\} \cap B_X \), and it is clear that \( f(-x) = 1 \). Finally, let us see (2). We spare the details of the proof of (a) to the reader.

(b) First, to show that \( S_X(x, r) \cap S_X \) has exactly two path-connected components, it is enough to recall that \( B_X(x, r) \cap S_X \) as well as \( U_X(x, r) \cap S_X \) are path-connected (Proposition 3.2 and Proposition 3.3) and that \( S_X \setminus \{-x\} \) is homeomorphic to \( \mathbb{R} \) (Fact 2.2). Let us prove then that these two path-connected components are actually segments. Set \( C := B_X(x, r) \cap S_X \). Since \( 0 < r < 2 \), we have that \( \text{diam}(C) > 0 \) and \( C \neq S_X \). Then, there are \( a \neq b \in S_X \) such that \( \{a, b\} = \text{bd}_{S_X}(C) \). Now, consider the continuous mapping \( \phi : [0, 1] \rightarrow S_X \) defined for \( t \in [0, 1/2] \) as
\[
\phi(t) = \frac{(2t)x + (1 - 2t)a}{\|t(2t)x + (1 - 2t)a\|}
\]
and for \( t \in [1/2, 1] \) as
\[
\phi(t) = \frac{(2t - 1)b + (2 - 2t)x}{\|(2t - 1)b + (2 - 2t)x\|}.
\]
Then, \( D = \phi([0, 1]) \) is a closed, connected subset of \( S_X \) satisfying \( \text{bd}_{S_X}(D) = \text{bd}_{S_X}(C) \) and \( \text{int}_{S_X}(D) \cap \text{int}_{S_X}(C) \supseteq \{x\} \neq \emptyset \). Thus, \( D = C \) in virtue of Theorem 2.3. Since \( U_X(x, r) \cap S_X \subseteq \text{int}_{S_X}(C) \), we have that \( \text{bd}_{S_X}(C) \subseteq S_X(x, r) \cap S_X \). Let us denote by \( A \) the path-connected component of \( a \) in \( S_X(x, r) \cap S_X \). We have that \( A \) is a closed, connected subset of \( S_X \) with \( A \neq S_X \). If \( \text{diam}(A) = 0 \), then we are done. Assume that \( A \) has diameter strictly greater than 0. Let \( a' \neq a \) such that \( \text{bd}_{S_X}(A) = \{a, a'\} \). Clearly, the two connected components of \( C \setminus \{x\} \) are \( \phi\left([0, 1/2]\right) \) and \( \phi\left([1/2, 1]\right) \), thus \( A \) must be contained in \( \phi\left([0, 1/2]\right) \). Now, by applying Lemma 3.1, the segment \([a', a] \) lies on the unit sphere and so \( A = [a', a] \). Similarly, the other path-connected component of \( S_X(x, r) \) is also a segment.

(c) Similarly to the previous reasoning, to show that \( S_X(x, r) \cap S_X \) is path-connected, we only need to take into consideration that \( B_X(x, r) \cap S_X \) as well as \( U_X(x, r) \cap S_X \) are path-connected and that \( S_X \setminus \{-x\} \) is homeomorphic to a real Banach space of dimension \( \geq 2 \).

\[\square\]

4. A characterization of rotundity for radii equal to 2

In the last two sections we will provide characterizations of rotundity involving connectedness in two real dimensions. The main idea is to make use of balls and spheres with radii strictly greater than 0 and less than or equal to 2. We will begin with the case of radii equal to 2.
**Proposition (4.1).** Let $X$ be a real Banach space. Let $x \in S_X$. The following are equivalent:

1. $\text{cl}_{S_X} (U_X(x, 2) \cap S_X) = S_X$.
2. $\text{bd}_{S_X} (U_X(x, 2) \cap S_X) = S_X(x, 2) \cap S_X$.
3. $\text{int}_{S_X} (S_X(x, 2) \cap S_X) = \emptyset$.

**Proof.** The proof is based upon the fact that $S_X(x, 2) \cap S_X$ is closed in $S_X$, $U_X(x, 2) \cap S_X$ is open in $S_X$, and $S_X = (U_X(x, 2) \cap S_X) \cup (S_X(x, 2) \cap S_X)$.

**Theorem (4.2).** Let $X$ be a real Banach space. Then:

1. $X$ is rotund if and only if $S_X(x, 2) \cap S_X = \{ -x \}$ for all $x \in S_X$. In particular, $X$ satisfies all the equivalent conditions in the previous proposition for any $x \in S_X$.
2. If $X$ is 2-dimensional, then $X$ is rotund if and only if $X$ satisfies all the equivalent conditions in the previous proposition for any $x \in S_X$.

**Proof.**

1. By applying Proposition 3.6, we observe that if $X$ is rotund, then $S_X(x, 2) \cap S_X = \{ -x \}$. On the other hand, if $[a, b]$ is a non-trivial segment contained in $S_X$, by Proposition 3.6 again, we have that $S_X \left( -\frac{a + b}{2}, 2 \right) \cap S_X \supseteq [a, b]$.

2. Now, assume that $X$ is 2-dimensional and satisfies all the equivalent conditions in the previous proposition. By hypothesis, we have that $S_X(x, 2) \cap S_X$ has empty interior relative to $S_X$ for every $x \in S_X$, which necessarily means that $S_X(x, 2) \cap S_X = \{ -x \}$ for every $x \in S_X$.

By taking into consideration Theorem 4.2, we can enunciate the following question.

**Question (4.3).** Let $X$ be a 2-dimensional real Banach space such that $S_X(x, 2) \cap S_X$ is convex for every $x \in S_X$. Is then $X$ rotund?

The next example reveals a negative answer to the previous question.

**Example (4.4).** The 2-dimensional real Banach space $X$ such that $B_X := B_{\ell_2^2} \cap \left\{ (x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : -\frac{1}{2} \leq y \leq \frac{1}{2} \right\}$ verifies that $S_X(x, 2) \cap S_X$ is convex for every $x \in S_X$ but it is not rotund. Even more, the two path-connected components of $S_X((-1, 0), 1) \cap S_X$ are non-trivial segments, so $X$ will not satisfy the equivalent conditions of the Proposition 5.1 and hence it will not be rotund in virtue of Theorem 5.2.

To finish this section, we present another characterization of rotundity.

**Theorem (4.5).** Let $X$ be a real Banach space. The following conditions are equivalent:

1. $X$ is rotund.
2. If $U$ is an open, connected subset of $S_X$ with $\text{cl}_{S_X}(U) = S_X$, then there exists $x \in S_X$ such that $U = U_X(x, 2) \cap S_X$.

**Proof.** Assume first that $X$ is rotund. Let $U$ be an open, connected subset of $S_X$ with $\text{cl}_{S_X}(U) = S_X$. Then, $S_X \setminus U = \{y\}$ for some $y \in S_X$. Now, $U_X(x, 2) \cap S_X$ and $U$ are open, connected subsets of $S_X$ whose interiors relative to $S_X$ are non-empty. In accordance to Theorem 2.3, they must equal. Assume that (2) holds. Suppose on the contrary that $x \in S_X$ such that $U_X(x, 2) \cap S_X = U$. Then,

$$4 = \|2x - (a + b)\| \leq \|x - a\| + \|x - b\| \leq 4.$$  

This necessarily means that $\|x - a\| = 2 = \|x - b\|$. However, this contradicts the fact that $a, b \in U_X(x, 2) \cap S_X$. 

$\square$

5. **A characterization of rotundity for radii strictly between 0 and 2**

The version of Proposition 4.1 for radii strictly between 0 and 2 is expressed in the next proposition. This time, we will not have equivalent conditions to rotundity.

**PROPOSITION (5.1).** Let $X$ be a real Banach space. Let $x \in S_X$ and $0 < r < 2$. The following are equivalent:

1. $\text{cl}_{S_X}(U_X(x, r) \cap S_X) = B_X(x, r) \cap S_X$.
2. $\text{int}_{S_X}(B_X(x, r) \cap S_X) = U_X(x, r) \cap S_X$.
3. $\text{bd}_{S_X}(B_X(x, r) \cap S_X) = S_X(x, r) \cap S_X$.
4. $\text{bd}_{S_X}(U_X(x, r) \cap S_X) = S_X(x, r) \cap S_X$.
5. $\text{int}_{S_X}(S_X(x, r) \cap S_X) = \emptyset$.

**Proof.** The proof is based upon the fact that $B_X(x, r) \cap S_X$ and $S_X(x, r) \cap S_X$ are closed in $S_X$, $U_X(x, r) \cap S_X$ is open in $S_X$, and

$$B_X(x, r) \cap S_X = (U_X(x, r) \cap S_X) \cup (S_X(x, r) \cap S_X).$$  

$\square$

The next theorem is the version of Theorem 4.2 for radii strictly between 0 and 2.

**THEOREM (5.2).** Let $X$ be a real Banach space. If $X$ is rotund, then $X$ satisfies all the equivalent conditions in the previous proposition for any $x \in S_X$ and any $0 < r < 2$.

**Proof.** Assume that $X$ does not satisfy those conditions for some $x \in S_X$ and $0 < r < 2$. Then, $S_X(x, r) \cap S_X$ has non-empty interior relative to $S_X$. Thus, let $b \in \text{int}_{S_X}(S_X(x, r) \cap S_X)$. Set $Y = \text{span}(\{x, b\})$. Obviously, $b \in \text{int}_{S_Y}(S_Y(x, r) \cap S_Y)$. Therefore, by applying Proposition 3.6, we know that $S_Y(x, r) \cap S_Y$ has two path-connected components that are non-trivial segments. This contradicts the fact that $X$ is rotund. 

$\square$

The previous theorem motivates the following question.

**Question (5.3).** Let $X$ be a 2-dimensional real Banach space. Assume that $X$ verifies all the equivalent conditions in Proposition 5.1. Is then $X$ rotund?
By means of the next example we will show that the previous question has a negative answer.

**Example (5.4).** The 2-dimensional real Banach space $X$ whose unit ball is given by

$$B_X := \text{co} \{(-1, 1), (1, 1), (2, 0), (1, -1), (-1, -1), (-2, 0)\}$$

satisfies all the equivalent conditions in Proposition 5.1 but does not satisfy the fact that the set $S_X(x, 2) \cap S_X$ is convex for every $x \in S_X$, and hence it is not rotund.

Now, the previous example motivates the following question.

**Question (5.5).** Let $X$ be a 2-dimensional real Banach space. Assume that $X$ satisfies all the equivalent conditions in Proposition 5.1 along with the fact that $S_X(x, 2) \cap S_X$ is convex for every $x \in S_X$. Is then $X$ rotund?

Unfortunately, the answer is again negative.

**Example (5.6).** The 2-dimensional real Banach space $X$ whose unit ball is given by

$$B_X := B_{c_1}((-1, 0), 1) \cup B_{c_2}(1, 0), 1$$

verifies all the equivalent conditions in Proposition 5.1 along with the fact that $S_X(x, 2) \cap S_X$ is convex for every $x \in S_X$.

Finally, since Proposition 5.1 does not provide us with an equivalent formulation of rotundity, we present the final (and main) theorem of this manuscript, which is the version of Theorem 4.5 for radii strictly between 0 and 2 and characterizes rotundity in 2-dimensional real Banach spaces.

**Theorem (5.7).** Let $X$ be a 2-dimensional real Banach space. The following are equivalent:

1. $X$ is rotund.
2. If $C$ is a closed, connected subset of $S_X$ such that $\text{diam}(C) > 0$ and $C \neq S_X$, then there exist $x \in S_X$ and $r \in (0, 2)$ satisfying $C = B_X(x, r) \cap S_X$.
3. If $U$ is an open, connected subset of $S_X$ such that $\text{cl}(U) \neq S_X$, then there exist $x \in S_X$ and $r \in (0, 2)$ satisfying $U = U_X(x, r) \cap S_X$.

**Proof.** We will see that (1) and (2) are equivalent. The equivalence of (1) and (3) is similar. Assume that $X$ is rotund. Let $C$ be a closed, connected subset of $S_X$ such that $\text{diam}(C) > 0$ and $C \neq S_X$. Let $a \neq b \in S_X$ such that $\text{bd}_{S_X}(C) = \{a, b\}$. By the connectedness of $C$, there must be a point $x \in C$ such that $\|x - a\| = \|x - b\|$. Take $r = \|x - a\| = \|x - b\|$. It is clear that $r > 0$ because $a \neq b$. Furthermore, since $X$ is rotund, if $r = 2$, then $a = b = -x$, which is impossible. By Proposition 3.6, $S_X(x, r) \cap S_X$ is composed exactly by two path-connected components which are segments. Since $X$ is rotund, $S_X(x, r) \cap S_X = \{a, b\}$, so, again by Proposition 3.6, $\text{bd}_{S_X}(B_X(x, r) \cap S_X) = \text{bd}_{S_X}(C)$. Furthermore, $\text{int}_{S_X}(B_X(x, r) \cap S_X) \cap \text{int}_{S_X}(C) \supseteq \{x\} \neq \emptyset$, therefore $C = B_X(x, r) \cap S_X$. Assume that condition (2) holds. If $X$ is not rotund, then we can consider a non-trivial segment $[a, b]$ lying on the unit sphere of $X$. Now, set $C := S_X \setminus (a, b)$. We have that $C$ is a closed, connected subset of $S_X$ such that $\text{diam}(C) > 0$ and $C \neq S_X$. Therefore, there exist $x \in S_X$ and $r \in (0, 2)$
satisfying $C = B_X(x, r) \cap S_X$. Since $r < 2$, we have that $-x \notin B_X(x, r) \cap S_X$, so $-x \in (a, b)$, but then $r = \|x - a\| = 2$ in virtue of Proposition 3.6.

\begin{flushright}
\text{Received February 26, 2008}
\text{Final version received, April 15, 2009}
\end{flushright}

\text{DEPARTMENT MATHEMATICS,}
\text{TEXAS A\&M UNIVERSITY,}
\text{COLLEGE STATION, TEXAS, 77843-3368,}
\text{THE UNITED STATES}
fgarcia@math.tamu.edu

\textbf{REFERENCES}

THE SPECTRAL MAPPING FORMULA IN
AREN-MICHAEL-FRÈCHET ALGEBRAS

ARMANDO VELÁZQUEZ GONZÁLEZ

Abstract. We consider the left joint spectrum on a unital Arens-Michael-Frèchét algebra $B$ and we prove the spectral mapping formula.

Introduction

The algebras we deal with are complex algebras with unit $e$ and the topological spaces involved are Hausdorff spaces.

Let $B$ be a locally multiplicatively convex algebra (abbreviated lcm algebra) with unit $e$, and $\mathcal{U} = \{U_\alpha\}$ with $\alpha \in \Lambda$ a local basis of $B$ consisting of closed balanced convex absorbing and multiplicative subsets. Consider the respective Minkowski functionals $\Gamma = \{P_\alpha\}$, $\alpha \in \Lambda$, which are continuous seminorms that satisfy $P_\alpha(xy) \leq P_\alpha(x)P_\alpha(y)$ and $P_\alpha(e) = 1$, for all $x, y \in B$ and for every index $\alpha \in \Lambda$.

Let $B_\alpha = B/\ker P_\alpha$ (resp., $\hat{B}_\alpha$), $\alpha \in \Lambda$, be the normed (resp., Banach) algebras corresponding to the given local basis $\mathcal{U}$, where $\hat{B}_\alpha$ is the completion of the normed algebra $B_\alpha$. Then $B$ is isomorphic to a subalgebra of the cartesian product of normed algebras $B_\alpha$ (Arens-Michael decomposition, see [Ma]). Moreover $\pi_\alpha(B) = B_\alpha$ is dense in $\hat{B}_\alpha$ for all $\alpha \in \Lambda$, where $\pi_\alpha: B \to B_\alpha$, $x \mapsto [x]_\alpha = x + \ker P_\alpha$, is the natural homomorphism of $B$ onto $B_\alpha$ which is open and continuous. A complete lcm algebra is called Arens-Michael algebra (see[He]).

A lcm algebra whose underlying topological vector space is a metrizable and complete space is called a Arens-Michael-Frèchét algebra or Frèchét lcm algebra.

The left joint spectrum of a $k$-tuple of mutually commuting elements $a_1, \ldots, a_k \in B$ is defined as the set of those $\lambda = (\lambda_1, \ldots, \lambda_k) \in \mathbb{C}^k$ for which the left ideal generated in $B$ by the elements $a_1 - \lambda_1 e, \ldots, a_k - \lambda_k e$ is proper. The left joint spectrum is denoted by $\sigma^l_B(a_1, \ldots, a_k)$.

Similarly $\sigma^r_B(a_1, \ldots, a_k)$ is defined. The set $\sigma_B(a_1, \ldots, a_k) = \sigma^l_B(a_1, \ldots, a_k) \cup \sigma^r_B(a_1, \ldots, a_k)$ is called the Harte spectrum of $a_1, \ldots, a_k$ in $B$.

2000 Mathematics Subject Classification: 46H20.

Keywords and phrases: Arens-Michael-Frèchét algebras, ideal, joint spectrum, spectral mapping formula.

175
The spectral mapping formula of Harte states that for an arbitrary polynomial mapping \( P : \mathbb{C}^k \to \mathbb{C}^n \),
\[
P(\sigma_B(a_1, \ldots, a_k)) = \sigma_B(P(a_1, \ldots, a_k))
\]
and this formula holds for the left and the right spectra separately.

We know that every element of a unital Arens-Michael-Frèchet algebra over \( \mathbb{C} \) has a nontrivial spectrum. Section 1 studies the projection property of the family of ideals which in the case of left ideals says that:

If the mutually commuting elements \( a_1, \ldots, a_k \) generate a proper left ideal in \( B \) and if \( c \in B \) commutes with all \( a_i, 1 \leq i \leq k \), then there exists \( \lambda \in \mathbb{C} \) such that the left ideal generated by the elements \( a_1, \ldots, a_k, c - \lambda e \) is also proper.

In section 2 we prove that the left joint spectrum of a \( k \)-tuple of mutually commuting elements \( a_1, \ldots, a_k \in B \) is nonempty and it satisfies the spectral mapping formula.

Since the case of left and right ideals can be treated similarly, in what follows we consider the left ideals and the left joint spectrum.

1. The projection property

**Lemma (1.1).** Let \( B \) be a complex Arens-Michael-Frèchet algebra with unit \( e \) and \( I_B^l(a_1, \ldots, a_k) \) a proper left ideal in \( B \) generated by \( a_1, \ldots, a_k \). Then the closure of \( I_B^l(a_1, \ldots, a_k) \) is also proper in \( B \).

**Proof.** We consider \( I_B^l(a_1, \ldots, a_k) \). We claim that there exists \( \alpha \in \Lambda \) such that \( I_{\hat{B}_\alpha}(\pi_\alpha(a_1), \ldots, \pi_\alpha(a_k)) \) is the proper left ideal in \( \hat{B}_\alpha \) generated by \( \pi_\alpha(a_1), \ldots, \pi_\alpha(a_k) \), where \( \pi_\alpha \) is the open and continuous natural homomorphism from \( B \) to \( B_\alpha \). Assume the opposite: for all \( \alpha \in \Lambda \) \( I_{\hat{B}_\alpha}(\pi_\alpha(a_1), \ldots, \pi_\alpha(a_k)) = \hat{B}_\alpha \). Therefore there exist \( \tilde{b}_i \in \hat{B}_\alpha \), \( 1 \leq i \leq k \), such that
\[
\sum_{i=1}^{k} \tilde{b}_i \pi_\alpha(a_i) = e_\alpha
\]
for all \( \alpha \in \Lambda \), where \( e_\alpha \) is the unit of \( \hat{B}_\alpha \). Then by Theorem 4.2 (see [A]), there exist \( b_i \in B \) such that
\[
\sum_{i=1}^{k} b_i a_i = e,
\]
and we would have that \( e \in I_B^l(a_1, \ldots, a_k) \), which is a contradiction.

Since \( \hat{B}_\alpha \) is a unital complex Banach algebra, the closure of \( I_{\hat{B}_\alpha}(\pi_\alpha(a_1), \ldots, \pi_\alpha(a_k)) \) is also proper in \( \hat{B}_\alpha \). Thus \( \pi_\alpha^{-1}\left(I_{\hat{B}_\alpha}(\pi_\alpha(a_1), \ldots, \pi_\alpha(a_k))\right) \) is a closed proper left ideal in \( B \). Therefore the closure of \( I_B^l(a_1, \ldots, a_k) \) is proper in \( B \). \( \square \)

**Theorem (1.2).** Let \( B \) be a complex Arens-Michael-Frèchet algebra with unit \( e \). Suppose that for every \((k + n)\)-tuple of mutually commuting elements \( a_1, \ldots, a_k, b_1, \ldots, b_n \in B \) the left ideal in \( B \) generated by \( a_1, \ldots, a_k \) is proper in \( B \). Then there exists \( \lambda \in \mathbb{C}^n \) such that the left ideal in \( B \) generated by \( a_1, \ldots, a_k, b_1 - \lambda_1 e, \ldots, b_n - \lambda_n e \) is proper in \( B \).
Proof. Let us consider the case $n = 1$. We denote by $M$ the closure of the left ideal in $B$ generated by $a_1, \ldots, a_k$. The ideal $M$ is proper in $B$ thanks to Lemma 1.1.

Let $b = b_1$ commuting with $a_1, \ldots, a_k$ and $b \notin M$. Then there exists a submultiplicative seminorm $P_{\alpha}$ such that

$$\{x \in B : P_{\alpha}(x - b) < \varepsilon\} \cap M = \emptyset,$$

for some $\varepsilon > 0$. Hence $[b]_{\alpha}$ is not element of the closure of left ideal $M + \ker P_{\alpha} = \pi_{\alpha}(M)$.

Since $a_1, \ldots, a_k, b \in B$ are mutually commuting elements $[a_1]_{\alpha}, \ldots, [a_k]_{\alpha}, [b]_{\alpha} \in B_{\alpha} \subset \hat{B}_{\alpha}$ are also mutually commuting elements. We consider the left ideal in $\hat{B}_{\alpha}$ generated by $[a_1]_{\alpha}, \ldots, [a_k]_{\alpha}$. Since $\hat{B}_{\alpha}$ is a complex Banach algebra with unit $[e]_{\alpha}$, by Harte’s Theorem for complex Banach algebras with unit (see [H1]), there exists $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$ such that

$$(0, \ldots, 0, \lambda) \in \sigma^l_{\hat{B}_{\alpha}}([a_1]_{\alpha}, \ldots, [a_k]_{\alpha}, [b]_{\alpha}).$$

This implies that the left ideal $J$ in $\hat{B}_{\alpha}$ generated by $[a_1]_{\alpha}, \ldots, [a_k]_{\alpha}, [b]_{\alpha} - [\lambda e]_{\alpha}$ is proper, whence the closure of $J$ is proper in $\hat{B}_{\alpha}$. The closure of $J$ is a proper ideal in $B_{\alpha}$. So $\pi^{-1}_\alpha(J)$ is a closed proper left ideal in $B$. Therefore the left ideal in $B$ generated by $a_1, \ldots, a_k, b - \lambda e$ is proper in $B$.

The theorem is proved in the case $n = 1$. One obtains the complete result doing induction over $n$. \hfill \square

The right hand side version of this theorem holds also.

2. The spectrum $\sigma^l_B$ and the spectral mapping formula

THEOREM (2.1). Let $B$ be a unital Arens-Michael-Fréchet algebra over $\mathbb{C}$. For an arbitrary $(k + n)$-tuple of mutually commuting elements $a_1, \ldots, a_k, b_1, \ldots, b_n \in B$ and for every $(\lambda_1, \ldots, \lambda_k) \in \sigma^l_B(a_1, \ldots, a_k)$ there exists $(\mu_1, \ldots, \mu_n) \in \mathbb{C}^n$ such that

$$(\lambda_1, \ldots, \lambda_k, \mu_1, \ldots, \mu_n) \in \sigma^l_B(a_1, a_k, b_1, \ldots, b_n).$$

Proof. This follows from Theorem 1.2 and by definition of left joint spectrum. \hfill \square

COROLLARY (2.2). Let $B$ be a unital Arens-Michael-Fréchet algebra over $\mathbb{C}$. For an arbitrary $k$-tuple of mutually commuting elements $a_1, \ldots, a_k \in B$ the left joint spectrum $\sigma^l_B(a_1, \ldots, a_k)$ is nonempty.

In section 1 of [VW], we proved a purely algebraic fact about the left joint spectrum defined by a family of proper left ideals of a unital algebra (see Theorem 1.1). By that result and Theorem 1.2 we have the spectral mapping formula for $\sigma^l_B(a_1, \ldots, a_k)$.

THEOREM (2.3). Let $B$ be a unital Arens-Michael-Fréchet algebra over $\mathbb{C}$. Then the family of all finitely generated left ideals in $B$ has the projection property and for all $k$-tuple of mutually commuting elements $a_1, \ldots, a_k \in B$ and for
every polynomial mapping $P : \mathbb{C}^k \to \mathbb{C}^n$ the spectral mapping formula

$$P(\sigma^k_B(a_1, \ldots, a_k)) = \sigma^k_B(P(a_1, \ldots, a_k))$$

holds.

Acknowledgment

I thank Professor Antoni Wawrzyńczyk for his comments and suggestions on this paper.

Received August 1, 2008

Final version received May 13, 2009

Universidad Autónoma de la Ciudad de México
Colegio de Ciencia y Tecnología.
Academia de Matemáticas
Av. La Corona No. 320, Col. Loma la Palma
Del. Gustavo A. Madero, C.P. 07160, México D.F.
armando_velagon66@yahoo.com.mx

References


RANDOM SOLUTION OF NONLINEAR RANDOM MULTIVALUED 
OPERATOR INCLUSION

ISMAT BEG AND MUJAHID ABBAS

ABSTRACT. The existence of random fixed points of random multivalued operators satisfying certain contractive conditions is established. The results regarding common random fixed point of a pair of random $R$-multivalued operators are also obtained. Our work generalizes, refines and improves several earlier known results.

1. Introduction

Random nonlinear analysis has grown into an active research area and is highly associated with the study of random nonlinear operators and their properties which are needed in solving nonlinear random operator equations (see [6]). The study of random fixed point theory was initiated by the Prague school of probabilists in the 1950s ([11], [20]). The survey article by Bharucha-Reid [7] in 1976 attracted the attention of several mathematicians and gave wings to this theory. Itoh [14] extended Spacek's and Hans's theorems to multivalued contraction mappings. At present, the study of the fixed points of random operators of various types is a fascinating discipline for research lying at the intersection of nonlinear analysis and probability theory. In recent year a vast amount of mathematical activities have led to many remarkable new results which establish the existence of random fixed points of certain single valued and multivalued random operators. Various applications of this theory in diverse areas from pure mathematics to applied sciences have also been explored ([2], [3], [4], [5], [17], [21] and references therein). The aim of this paper is to establish the existence of random fixed points of random multivalued operators. This paper contains the results concerning common random fixed points of a pair of random $R$-multivalued operators. The results proved in this paper improve and generalize the several well known results in existing literature [16], [18] and [21].

2. Preliminaries

We first review some concepts for the convenience of the reader and state the notations used throughout this paper. Let $(X, d)$ be a metric space and let $F$ denote a nonempty subset of $(X, d)$. Let $(\Omega, \Sigma)$ be a measurable space ($\Sigma$ is a sigma algebra of subsets of $\Omega$). Let $2^X$ be the family of all subsets of $X$, $CB(X)$ all nonempty closed bounded subsets of $X$ and $C(X)$ all nonempty compact

2000 Mathematics Subject Classification: 47H09, 47H10, 47H40, 54H25, 60H25.

Keywords and phrases: random fixed point, random $R$-multivalued operator, measurable selector, metric space, Banach space.
subsets of $X$ respectively. For $A, B \in CB(X)$, $H(A, B)$ denotes the Hausdorff distance between $A$ and $B$ induced by the metric $d$ is given by,

$$H(A, B) = \max\{ \sup_{a \in A} d(a, B), \sup_{b \in B} d(b, A) : A, B \in CB(X) \},$$

where for $x \in X$ and $C \subset X$, $d(x, C) = \inf \{ d(x, y) : y \in C \}$ is the distance from the point $x$ to the subset $C$. A multivalued mapping $T : \Omega \to 2^X$ (or single valued mapping $T : \Omega \to X$) is measurable if $T^{-1}(U) \in \Sigma$ (or $T^{-1}(U) \in \Sigma$) for each open subset $U$ of $X$, where $T^{-1}(U) = \{ \omega \in \Omega : T(\omega) \cap U \neq \emptyset \}$. A multivalued mapping $T : \Omega \times F \to 2^X$ (or single valued mapping $T : \Omega \times F \to X$) is a random operator if and only if for each fixed $x \in F$, the mapping $T(., x) : \Omega \to 2^X$ (or $T(., x) : \Omega \to X$) is measurable and it is continuous if for each $\omega \in \Omega$, the mapping $T(\omega, .) : F \to 2^X$ (or $T(\omega, .) : F \to X$) is continuous. A measurable mapping $\xi : \Omega \to F$ is a random fixed point of a random operator $T : \Omega \times F \to 2^X$ (or $T : \Omega \times F \to X$) if and only if it is the random solution of the random operator inclusion $y(\omega) \in T(\omega, y(\omega))$ (or it is the random solution of the random operator equation $y(\omega) = T(\omega, y(\omega))$) for each $\omega \in \Omega$. We denote the set of random fixed points of a random operator $T$ by $RF(T)$ and the set of all measurable mappings from $\Omega$ into $X$ by $M(\Omega, X)$.

Let $B(x_0, r)$ denotes the spherical ball centered at $x_0$ with radius $r$, defined as the set $\{ x \in X : d(x, x_0) \leq r \}$. We denote the $n$-th iterate $T(\omega, T(\omega, T(\omega, \ldots, T(\omega, x) \ldots)))$ of the random operator $T : \Omega \times F \to F$ by $T^n(\omega, x)$. The letter $I$ denotes the random operator $I : \Omega \times F \to F$ defined by $I(\omega, x) = x$ and $T^0 = I$.

**Definition (2.1).** Let $F$ be a nonempty subset of a separable metric space $X$. The random operator $T : \Omega \times F \to F$ is said to be a random $k(\omega)$-contraction operator if for any $x, y \in F$ and $\omega \in \Omega$, we have

$$d(T(\omega, x), T(\omega, y)) \leq k(\omega)d(x, y),$$

where $k$ is a mapping from $\Omega$ into $(0, 1)$. If $k(\omega) = 1$ for any $\omega \in \Omega$, then $T$ is called a random nonexpansive operator.

**Definition (2.2) ([18]).** Let $F$ be a nonempty subset of $X$. A map $T : F \to 2^X$ is said to be $R$-multivalued map if there exists positive real numbers $\alpha, \beta, \gamma$ with $\alpha + \beta + \gamma < 1$ such that for each $x \in X$, any $u_x \in T(x)$ and for all $y \in X$, there is $u_y \in T(y)$ so that we have

$$d(u_x, u_y) \leq \alpha d(x, y) + \beta d(x, u_x) + \gamma d(y, u_y).$$

Taking $\alpha = 0$ and $\beta = \gamma = h, (0 \leq h < \frac{1}{2})$, we obtain a $K$-multivalued operator, which was introduced by Latif and Beg [16]. A random operator $T : \Omega \times F \to 2^X$ is said to be a random $R$-multivalued operator (random $K$-multivalued operator) if $T(\omega, )$ is a $R$-multivalued map ($K$-multivalued map) for each $\omega \in \Omega$.

**Definition (2.3).** Let $F$ be a nonempty subset of $X$. A pair of maps $T, S : F \to 2^X$ is said to be an $R$-multivalued pair if there exists positive real numbers $\alpha, \beta, \gamma$ with $\alpha + \beta + \gamma < 1$ such that for each $x \in X$, any $u_x \in T(x)$ and for all $y \in X$, there is $u_y \in S(y)$ so that we have

$$d(u_x, u_y) \leq \alpha d(x, y) + \beta d(x, u_x) + \gamma d(y, u_y).$$
A pair of random operators $T, S : \Omega \times F \rightarrow 2^X$ is said to be a random $R$-multivalued pair of operators if $T(\omega, .)$ and $S(\omega, .)$ form an $R$-multivalued pair of maps for each $\omega \in \Omega$.

**Definition (2.4).** Let $F$ be a nonempty subset of $X$. A pair of maps $T, S : F \rightarrow 2^X$ is said to be a $K$-multivalued pair if there exists a positive real number $h$ with $0 \leq h < \frac{1}{2}$ such that for each $x \in X$, any $u_x \in T(x)$ and for all $y \in X$, there is $u_y \in S(y)$ so that we have

$$d(u_x, u_y) \leq h[d(x, u_x) + d(y, u_y)].$$

A pair of random operators $T, S : \Omega \times F \rightarrow 2^X$ is said to be a random $K$-multivalued pair of operators if $T(\omega, .)$ and $S(\omega, .)$ form a $K$-multivalued pair of maps for each $\omega \in \Omega$.

**Remark (2.5).** Let $F$ be a closed subset of a separable complete metric space $X$ and let the sequence of measurable mappings $\{\xi_n\}$ from $\Omega$ into $F$ be pointwise convergent, that is, $\xi_n(\omega) \rightarrow q := \xi(\omega)$ for each $\omega \in \Omega$. Then $\xi$ being the limit of the sequence of measurable mappings is measurable, and closedness of $F$ implies $\xi$ is a mapping from $\Omega$ into $F$. Since $F$ is a subset of a complete separable metric space $X$, also if $T$ is a continuous random operator from $\Omega \times F$ into $F$ then by the lemma 8.2.3 of [1], the map $\omega \rightarrow T^\circ(\omega, f(\omega))$ is measurable for any measurable mapping $f$ from $\Omega$ into $F$. For further details see [12].

**Definition (2.6).** A random operator $T : \Omega \times X \rightarrow 2^X$ is called a random multivalued weakly dissipative operator if there exists a random map $\varphi : \Omega \times X \rightarrow R$ such that for all $x \in X$, there is $y \in T(\omega, x)$ for each $\omega \in \Omega$ satisfying the inequality

$$d(x, y) < \varphi(\omega, x) - \varphi(\omega, y), \text{ for every } \omega \in \Omega.$$

In the next definition, $X$ denotes a gauge space endowed with a complete gauge structure induced by a family $\{d_\alpha : \alpha \in \Lambda\}$ of pseudometrics, where $\Lambda$ is a directed set. Basic definitions and properties of gauge space may be found in [8]. We denote by $H_\alpha$ the generalized Hausdorff pseudometric induced by $d_\alpha$.

**Definition (2.7).** A multivalued map $T : X \rightarrow 2^X$ is called an admissible contractive map with $\{k_\alpha\} \subseteq [0, 1)$ if

(i) for every $\alpha \in \Lambda$, $H_\alpha(T(x), T(y)) \leq k_\alpha d_\alpha(x, y)$ for every $x, y \in X$

(ii) for every $x \in X$ and every $\{e_\alpha\} \subseteq (0, \infty)$, there is $y \in T(x)$ such that $d_\alpha(x, y) \leq d_\alpha(x, T(x)) + e_\alpha$ for every $\alpha \in \Lambda$

A random operator $T : \Omega \times X \rightarrow 2^X$ is called a random multivalued admissible contractive operator if $T(\omega, .)$ is an admissible contractive map for each $\omega \in \Omega$.

**3. Random fixed points of random multivalued operators**

In this section, we obtain the random fixed point theorems for random multivalued operators satisfying certain contractive conditions.

**Theorem (3.1).** Let $X$ be a separable complete gauge space and $T : \Omega \times X \rightarrow CB(X)$ be an admissible contractive random operator. If $\xi_0 : \Omega \rightarrow X$ is any fixed measurable mapping such that $d_\alpha(\xi_0(\omega), T(\omega, \xi_0(\omega))) < (1 - k_\alpha(\omega))r_\alpha(\omega)$ for each
\( \alpha \in \Lambda \) and \( \omega \in \Omega \), where \( \{\eta_{\alpha}(\omega)\} \subseteq (0, \infty) \) for each \( \omega \in \Omega \), then \( T \) has a random fixed point.

**Proof.** Choose \( \xi_1 \in M(\Omega, X) \) such that \( \xi_1(\omega) \in T(\omega, \xi_0(\omega)) \) for each \( \omega \in \Omega \). Consider the measurable mapping \( \omega \rightarrow T(\omega, \xi_0(\omega)) \) from \( \Omega \) to \( CB(X) \). The existence of a measurable mapping \( \xi_1 : \Omega \rightarrow X \) is due to Kuratowski and Ryll-Nardzewski [15]. By the definition,

\[
d_{\alpha}(\xi_0(\omega), \xi_1(\omega)) < (1 - k_{\alpha}(\omega))\eta_{\alpha}(\omega), \quad \text{for each } \alpha \in \Lambda \text{ and } \omega \in \Omega.
\]

Similarly choose \( \xi_2 \in M(\Omega, F) \) such that \( \xi_2(\omega) \in T(\omega, \xi_1(\omega)) \), for each \( \omega \in \Omega \),

\[
d_{\alpha}(\xi_1(\omega), \xi_2(\omega)) < d_{\alpha}(\xi_1(\omega), T(\omega, \xi_1(\omega))) + k_{\alpha}(\omega)((1 - k_{\alpha}(\omega))\eta_{\alpha}(\omega))
\]

\[
- d_{\alpha}(\xi_0(\omega), \xi_1(\omega))
\]

\[
\leq h_{\alpha}(T(\omega, \xi_0(\omega)), T(\omega, \xi_1(\omega))) + k_{\alpha}(\omega)((1 - k_{\alpha}(\omega))\eta_{\alpha}(\omega))
\]

\[
- d_{\alpha}(\xi_0(\omega), \xi_1(\omega))
\]

\[
\leq k_{\alpha}(\omega)d_{\alpha}(\xi_0(\omega), \xi_1(\omega)) + k_{\alpha}(\omega)((1 - k_{\alpha}(\omega))\eta_{\alpha}(\omega))
\]

\[
- d_{\alpha}(\xi_0(\omega), \xi_1(\omega))
\]

\[
= k_{\alpha}(\omega)(1 - k_{\alpha}(\omega))\eta_{\alpha}(\omega), \quad \text{for each } \alpha \in \Lambda \text{ and } \omega \in \Omega.
\]

Continuing this process we obtain a sequence of measurable maps \( \{\xi_n\} \) such that for every \( \omega \in \Omega \) we have

\[
d_{\alpha}(\xi_n(\omega), \xi_{n+1}(\omega)) \leq (k_{\alpha}(\omega))^n(1 - k_{\alpha}(\omega))\eta_{\alpha}(\omega), \quad \text{for each } \alpha \in \Lambda.
\]

Now \( \{\xi_n(\omega)\} \) is a Cauchy sequence in \( X \) for every \( \omega \in \Omega \). Since \( X \) is complete, therefore \( \xi_n(\omega) \rightarrow p(\omega) \) for every \( \omega \in \Omega \), \( p : \Omega \rightarrow X \) being a limit of sequence of measurable functions is also measurable. The continuity of \( T \) implies \( p \) is a solution of random operator inclusion \( x(\omega) \in T(\omega, x(\omega)) \) for each \( \omega \in \Omega \).

**Theorem (3.2).** Let \( X \) be a separable complete metric space and let \( T : \Omega \times X \rightarrow 2^X \) be a random weakly dissipative demiclosed multivalued operator assuming closed values. Then \( T \) has a random fixed point.

**Proof.** Let \( \xi_0 : \Omega \rightarrow X \) be any fixed measurable mapping and \( \xi_1 : \Omega \rightarrow X \) be a measurable mapping such that \( \xi_1(\omega) \in T(\omega, \xi_0(\omega)) \) for each \( \omega \in \Omega \). The measurable mapping \( \xi_1 : \Omega \rightarrow X \) can be obtained by applying the selection theorem due to Kuratowski and Ryll-Nardzewski [15]. Now

\[
d(\xi_0(\omega), \xi_1(\omega)) < \varphi(\omega, \xi_0(\omega)) - \varphi(\omega, \xi_1(\omega)),
\]

for every \( \omega \in \Omega \). Continuing in this way we obtain a sequence of measurable mappings \( \xi_n : \Omega \rightarrow X \) such that \( \xi_n(\omega) \in T(\omega, \xi_{n-1}(\omega)) \) for every \( \omega \in \Omega \). Now for \( q \geq p \), we have

\[
d(\xi_p(\omega), \xi_q(\omega)) \leq \sum_{n=p}^{q-1} d(\xi_n(\omega), \xi_{n+1}(\omega)) \leq \varphi(\omega, \xi_p(\omega)) - \varphi(\omega, \xi_q(\omega)),
\]

for every \( \omega \in \Omega \). Since \( \{\varphi(\omega, \xi_n(\omega))\} \) is a non increasing and bounded below sequence of real numbers for each \( \omega \in \Omega \). Now \( \{\xi_n(\omega)\} \) is a Cauchy sequence for every \( \omega \in \Omega \). By completeness of the space \( X \), there exists \( \xi(\omega) \in X \) for each \( \omega \) in \( \Omega \) such that \( d(\xi_n(\omega), \xi(\omega)) \rightarrow 0 \) as \( n \rightarrow \infty \) (The mapping \( \xi : \Omega \rightarrow X \) is a pointwise limit of a sequence of measurable mappings \( \{\xi_n\} \), therefore it is
measurable). Now construction of the sequence of measurable mappings and demiclosedness of $T$ implies the existence of stochastic solution to the random operator inclusion $x(\omega) \in T(\omega, x(\omega))$ for every $\omega \in \Omega$.

Latif and Beg [16] coined the notion of $K$-multivalued maps and proved some fixed points theorems for such maps. Recently, Rus et al. [18] defined a new class of $R$-multivalued maps which contains $K$-multivalued maps. Now, we prove the set of random fixed points of $K$-multivalued random operator is nonempty.

**Theorem (3.3).** Let $X$ be a separable complete metric space and let $T: \Omega \times X \to 2^X$ be a random $K$-multivalued operator assuming closed values. Then $T$ has a random fixed point.

**Proof.** Let $\xi_0: \Omega \to X$ be any fixed measurable mapping and $\xi_1: \Omega \to X$ be a measurable mapping such that $\xi_1(\omega) \in T(\omega, \xi_0(\omega))$, for each $\omega \in \Omega$. The existence of a measurable mapping $\xi_1: \Omega \to X$ is due to Kuratowski and Ryll-Nardzewski [15]. Choose a measurable mapping $\xi_2: \Omega \to X$ such that $\xi_2(\omega) \in T(\omega, \xi_1(\omega))$, for each $\omega \in \Omega$. Since $T(\omega, \cdot)$ is random $K$-multivalued operator for each $\omega \in \Omega$, therefore

$$d(\xi_1(\omega), \xi_2(\omega)) \leq h(\omega)[d(\xi_0(\omega), \xi_1(\omega)) + d(\xi_0(\omega), \xi_2(\omega))],$$

which gives

$$d(\xi_1(\omega), \xi_2(\omega)) \leq \frac{h(\omega)}{1 - h(\omega)} d(\xi_0(\omega), \xi_1(\omega)),$$

for each $\omega \in \Omega$ and $h: \Omega \to [0, \frac{1}{2})$. Continuing in this way we form a sequence of measurable mappings $\xi_n: \Omega \to X$ such that $\xi_{n+1}(\omega) \in T(\omega, \xi_n(\omega))$ for every $\omega$ in $\Omega$ and

$$d(\xi_n(\omega), \xi_{n+1}(\omega)) \leq \left[ \frac{h(\omega)}{1 - h(\omega)} \right]^n d(\xi_0(\omega), \xi_1(\omega)),$$

for every $\omega \in \Omega$. Put $\lambda(\omega) = \frac{h(\omega)}{1 - h(\omega)}$, then $0 \leq \lambda(\omega) < 1$. Therefore

$$d(\xi_n(\omega), \xi_{n+1}(\omega)) \leq [\lambda(\omega)]^n d(\xi_0(\omega), \xi_1(\omega)),$$

for every $\omega$ in $\Omega$. Now $\{\xi_n(\omega)\}$ is a Cauchy sequence in $X$ for every $\omega \in \Omega$. Indeed, let $\omega$ be an arbitrary fixed point, let $m < n$, we have

$$d(\xi_n(\omega), \xi_\omega(\omega)) \leq \sum_{i=m}^{n-1} (\lambda(\omega))^i d(\xi_1(\omega), \xi_0(\omega)).$$

Thus $\{\xi_n(\omega)\}$ is a Cauchy sequence in $X$ for each $\omega \in \Omega$. By completeness of the space $X$, there exists $\xi(\omega) \in X$ for each $\omega$ in $\Omega$ such that $d(\xi_n(\omega), \xi(\omega)) \to 0$ as $n \to \infty$ (The mapping $\xi: \Omega \to X$ is a pointwise limit of measurable mappings $\{\xi_n\}$, therefore it is measurable). Choosing $\{\xi_n(\omega)\} \subseteq T(\omega, \xi(\omega))$ and employing the fact that $T(\omega, \cdot)$ is random $K$-multivalued operator for each $\omega \in \Omega$ we have $d(\xi_n(\omega), \xi(\omega)) \to 0$, as $n \to \infty$ since $T(\omega, \xi(\omega))$ is closed subset of $X$ for each $\omega$ in $\Omega$. So the result follows.

**Theorem (3.4).** Let $X$ be a complete separable metric space and let $T: \Omega \times X \to 2^X$ be a $R$-multivalued random operator assuming closed values. Then $T$ has a random fixed point.
Proof. Let $\xi_0 : \Omega \to X$ be any fixed measurable mapping and $\xi_1 : \Omega \to X$ be a measurable mapping such that $\xi_1(\omega) \in T(\omega, \xi_0(\omega))$, for each $\omega \in \Omega$. The existence of a measurable mapping $\xi_1 : \Omega \to X$ is due to the selection theorem of Kuratowski and Ryll-Nardzewski [15]. Choose a measurable mapping $\xi_2 : \Omega \to X$ such that $\xi_2(\omega) \in T(\omega, \xi_1(\omega))$, for each $\omega \in \Omega$. Since $T(\omega, \cdot)$ is a random $R$-multivalued operator for each $\omega \in \Omega$, therefore

$$d(\xi_1(\omega), \xi_2(\omega)) \leq \alpha(\omega)d(\xi_0(\omega), \xi_1(\omega)) + \beta(\omega)d(\xi_0(\omega), \xi_1(\omega)) + \gamma(\omega)d(\xi_1(\omega), \xi_2(\omega)),$$

for each $\omega \in \Omega$. Thus for every $\omega$ in $\Omega$, we have

$$d(\xi_1(\omega), \xi_2(\omega)) \leq \lambda(\omega)d(\xi_0(\omega), \xi_1(\omega)),$$

where, $\lambda(\omega) = \frac{\alpha(\omega) + \beta(\omega)}{1 - \gamma(\omega)} < 1$, for each $\omega \in \Omega$. Continuing in this way we form a sequence of measurable mappings $\xi_n : \Omega \to X$ such that

$$d(\xi_n(\omega), \xi_{n+1}(\omega)) \leq (\lambda(\omega))^n d(\xi_0(\omega), \xi_1(\omega)),$$

for every $\omega \in \Omega$. Thus $\{\xi_n(\omega)\}$ is a Cauchy sequence in $X$ for every $\omega \in \Omega$. Indeed, let $\omega$ be an arbitrary fixed point, let $m < n$,

$$d(\xi_{m+1}(\omega), \xi_n(\omega)) \leq d(\xi_{m+1}(\omega), \xi_{m+2}(\omega)) + d(\xi_{m+2}(\omega), \xi_{m+3}(\omega)) + \cdots + d(\xi_{n-1}(\omega), \xi_n(\omega)) \leq \sum_{i=m}^{n-1} \lambda^i(\omega)d(\xi_1(\omega), \xi_0(\omega)).$$

Thus, $\{\xi_n(\omega)\}$ is a Cauchy sequence in $X$ for each $\omega \in \Omega$. By completeness of the space $X$, there exists $\xi(\omega) \in X$ for each $\omega$ in $\Omega$ such that $d(\xi_n(\omega), \xi(\omega)) \to 0$, as $n \to \infty$ (The mapping $\xi : \Omega \to X$ is a pointwise limit of measurable mappings $\{\xi_n\}$, therefore it is measurable ). Choosing $\{\xi_n(\omega)\} \subseteq T(\omega, \xi(\omega))$ and employing the fact that $T(\omega, \cdot)$ is a random $R$-multivalued operator for each $\omega \in \Omega$, we have $d(\xi_n(\omega), \xi(\omega)) \to 0$, as $n \to \infty$ since $T(\omega, \xi(\omega))$ is closed subset of $X$ for each $\omega$ in $\Omega$. So $\xi$ is a random fixed point of $T$. \qed

4. Common random fixed point of random $R$-multivalued pair of operators

In this section the existence of common random fixed point of random $K$-multivalued pair of operators is also established. Finally, we gave the stochastic version of a result of Rus et al. [18].

**Theorem (4.1).** Let $X$ be a separable complete metric space and $T_1, T_2 : \Omega \times X \to 2^X$ form a random $K$-multivalued pair of operators assuming closed values. Then $T_1$ and $T_2$ have a common random fixed point.

**Proof.** Let $\xi_0 : \Omega \to X$ be any fixed measurable mapping and $\xi_1 : \Omega \to X$ be a measurable mapping such that $\xi_1(\omega) \in T_1(\omega, \xi_0(\omega))$, for each $\omega \in \Omega$. The existence of a measurable mapping $\xi_1 : \Omega \to X$ follows by Kuratowski and Ryll-Nardzewski [15]. Choose a measurable mapping $\xi_2 : \Omega \to X$ such that $\xi_2(\omega) \in T_2(\omega, \xi_1(\omega))$, for each $\omega \in \Omega$ since $T_1(\omega, \cdot)$ and $T_2(\omega, \cdot)$ form a random $K$-multivalued pair of operators for each $\omega \in \Omega$, therefore

$$d(\xi_1(\omega), \xi_2(\omega)) \leq \lambda(\omega)d(\xi_0(\omega), \xi_1(\omega)),$$
for each $\omega \in \Omega$ where, $0 \leq \lambda(\omega) = \frac{h(\omega)}{1 - h(\omega)} < 1$, for every $\omega \in \Omega$. Continuing in this way we form a sequence of measurable mappings $\xi_n : \Omega \to X$ such that $\xi_{2n-1}(\omega) \in T_1(\omega, \xi_{2n-2}(\omega))$ and $\xi_{2n}(\omega) \in T_2(\omega, \xi_{2n-1}(\omega))$ for every $\omega \in \Omega$ and

$$d(\xi_n(\omega), \xi_{n+1}(\omega)) \leq [\lambda(\omega)]^{n} d(\xi_0(\omega), \xi_1(\omega)),$$

for every $\omega \in \Omega$. Now $\{\xi_n(\omega)\}$ is a Cauchy sequence for every $\omega \in \Omega$, as shown in the previous theorem. By completeness of the space $X$, there exists $\xi(\omega) \in X$ for each $\omega \in \Omega$ such that $d(\xi_n(\omega), \xi(\omega)) \to 0$, as $n \to \infty$ (The mapping $\xi : \Omega \to X$ is a pointwise limit of measurable mappings $\{\xi_n\}$, therefore it is measurable) since $\xi_{2n}(\omega) \in T_2(\omega, \xi_{2n-1}(\omega))$ for every $\omega \in \Omega$. Choosing $\{\xi_n(\omega)\} \subseteq T_1(\omega, \xi(\omega))$ and employing the fact that $T_1(\omega, .)$ and $T_2(\omega, .)$ form a pair of random $K$-multivalued operators for each $\omega \in \Omega$, we have $d(\xi_n(\omega), \xi(\omega)) \to 0$, as $n \to \infty$ since $T_1(\omega, \xi(\omega))$ is closed subset of $X$ for each $\omega \in \Omega$. So $\xi$ is the random fixed point of $T_1$. Now we show that $RF(T_1) = RF(T_2)$. Let $\xi : \Omega \to X$ be the random fixed point of $T_1$, that is $\xi(\omega) \in T(\omega, \xi(\omega))$, for each $\omega \in \Omega$. Let $\xi : \Omega \to X$ be the measurable selection of $T_2(\omega, \xi_1(\omega))$, exploiting the fact that $T_1$ and $T_2$ form a random $K$-multivalued pair of operators, we have $\xi_1(\omega) = \xi_2(\omega)$, for every $\omega$ in $\Omega$. Hence the result follows.

**Theorem (4.2).** Let $X$ be a separable complete metric space and let $T_1$, $T_2 : \Omega \times X \to 2^X$ form a random $R$-multivalued pair of operators assuming closed values. Then $T_1$ and $T_2$ have a common random fixed point.

**Proof.** Let $\xi_0 : \Omega \to X$ be any fixed measurable mapping and $\xi_1 : \Omega \to X$ be a measurable mapping such that $\xi_1(\omega) \in T_1(\omega, \xi_0(\omega))$, for each $\omega \in \Omega$. The existence of a measurable mapping $\xi_1 : \Omega \to X$ is due to the selection theorem of Kuratowski and Ryll-Nardzewski [15]. Choose a measurable mapping $\xi_2 : \Omega \to X$ such that $\xi_2(\omega) \in T_2(\omega, \xi_1(\omega))$, for each $\omega \in \Omega$ since $T_1(\omega, .)$ and $T_2(\omega, .)$ form a random $R$-multivalued pair of operators for each $\omega \in \Omega$, therefore

$$d(\xi_1(\omega), \xi_2(\omega)) \leq \lambda(\omega)d(\xi_0(\omega), \xi_1(\omega)),$$

for each $\omega \in \Omega$ where $0 \leq \lambda(\omega) = \frac{\alpha(\omega) + \beta(\omega)}{1 - \gamma(\omega)} < 1$ for every $\omega \in \Omega$. Continuing in this manner we obtain a sequence of measurable mappings $\xi_n : \Omega \to X$ such that $\xi_{2n-1}(\omega) \in T_1(\omega, \xi_{2n-2}(\omega))$ and $\xi_{2n}(\omega) \in T_2(\omega, \xi_{2n-1}(\omega))$ and

$$d(\xi_n(\omega), \xi_{n+1}(\omega)) \leq [\lambda(\omega)]^{n} d(\xi_0(\omega), \xi_1(\omega)),$$

for every $\omega \in \Omega$. Now $\{\xi_n(\omega)\}$ is a Cauchy sequence for every $\omega \in \Omega$. By completeness of the space $X$, there exists $\xi(\omega) \in X$ for each $\omega$ in $\Omega$ such that $d(\xi_n(\omega), \xi(\omega)) \to 0$ as $n \to \infty$ (The mapping $\xi : \Omega \to X$ being a pointwise limit of a sequence of measurable mappings $\{\xi_n\}$ is measurable). Since $\xi_{2n}(\omega) \in T_2(\omega, \xi_{2n-1}(\omega))$ for every $\omega \in \Omega$. Choosing $\{\xi_n(\omega)\} \subseteq T_1(\omega, \xi(\omega))$ and employing the fact that $T_1(\omega, .)$ and $T_2(\omega, .)$ form a random $R$-multivalued pair of operators for each $\omega \in \Omega$, we have $d(\xi_n(\omega), \xi(\omega)) \to 0$ as $n \to \infty$ since $T_1(\omega, \xi(\omega))$ is closed subset of $X$ for each $\omega$ in $\Omega$. So $\xi$ is a random fixed point of $T_1$. Now we show that $RF(T_1) = RF(T_2)$. Let $\xi : \Omega \to X$ be the random fixed point of $T_1$, that is $\xi(\omega) \in T(\omega, \xi_1(\omega))$, for each $\omega \in \Omega$. Let $\xi : \Omega \to X$ be the measurable selection of $T_2(\omega, \xi_1(\omega))$, exploiting the fact that $T_1(\omega, .)$ and
$T_2(\omega, \cdot)$ form a random $K$-multivalued pair of operators, we have $\xi_1(\omega) = \xi_2(\omega)$ for every $\omega$ in $\Omega$. Hence the result follows.

Acknowledgment

The present version of the paper owes much to the precise and kind remarks of two anonymous referees.

Received May 8, 2007

Final version received April 27, 2008

Centre for Advanced Studies in Mathematics, Lahore University of Management Sciences, 54792-Lahore, Pakistan.

ibeg@lums.edu.pk

References

INEQUALITIES FOR A GENERALIZATION OF INTERSECTION BODIES

ZHAO LINGZHI AND SHEN YAJUN

ABSTRACT. In this paper, we establish the monotonicity for a generalized class of intersection bodies and give a generalization of the Funk section theorem.

1. Introduction

Let $L \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ be a star body, that is, a compact set which is star-shaped with respect to the origin and has a continuous radial function, $\rho(L, u) = \rho_L(u) = \max\{\lambda \geq 0 : \lambda u \in L\}$, $u \in S^{n-1}$. The intersection body, $IL$, of $L$ is the star body whose radial function in the direction $u \in S^{n-1}$ is equal to the $(n-1)$-dimensional volume of the section of $L$ by $u^\perp$, the hyperplane orthogonal to $u$. So, for $u \in S^{n-1}$,

\begin{equation}
\rho(IL, u) = \text{vol}(L \cap u^\perp),
\end{equation}

where $\text{vol}$ denotes $(n-1)$-dimensional volume.

The notion of intersection body has shown to be fundamentally connected to the Busemann-Petty problem (first posed in [2]): Given two centrally-symmetric star bodies $K$ and $L$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$ satisfying:

\begin{equation}
\text{vol}(K \cap u^\perp) \leq \text{vol}(L \cap u^\perp)
\end{equation}

for all $u \in S^{n-1}$. Does it follow that $V(K) \leq V(L)$?

The answer is affirmative if $n \leq 4$ and negative if $n \geq 5$. The solution appeared as the result of a sequence of papers [1], [2], [3], [5], [6], [7], [9], [10], [13], [16] (see [16] for historical details). In [11], Lutwak proved that the Busemann-Petty problem has a positive answer if $K$ is an intersection body in $\mathbb{R}^n$.

**Theorem (A).** Let $K$ be an intersection body and $L$ be a star body in $\mathbb{R}^n$. If

\begin{equation}
\text{vol}(K \cap u^\perp) \leq \text{vol}(L \cap u^\perp)
\end{equation}

for all $u \in S^{n-1}$, then

\[ V(K) \leq V(L), \]

with equality if and only if $K = L$.
The Funk section theorem [4], [8] shows that the operator $I$ is injective when restricted to centered star bodies. That is, if $K$ and $L$ are centered star bodies, then

$$IK = IL \Rightarrow K = L.$$  

In [12], Lv and Leng established an extension of the Funk section theorem as follows:

**Theorem (B).** Let $K$ be centered star body and $L$ be star body in $\mathbb{R}^n$. If

$$IK = IL,$$

then

$$V(K) \leq V(L),$$

with equality if and only if $K = L$.

In [15], Zhang introduced a generalized class of intersection bodies: If $L$ is a star body in $\mathbb{R}^n$ and $1 \leq i \leq n - 1$, the generalized class of intersection bodies of $L$ are the centered star body $I_iL$ such that

$$(1.3) \quad \rho_{I_iL}(u) = \frac{1}{n-1} \int_{S^{n-1} \cap u^\perp} \rho_L(v)^i dv$$

for all $u \in S^{n-1}$. By (1.1), (1.3) and the polar coordinate formula for volume, we have $I_{n-1}L = IL$.

In this paper, we extend above two theorems to the generalized class of intersection bodies. Let $\widetilde{W}_i(K)$ denote the dual quermassintegral of $K$ (please see next section for definition). Our main results can be stated as follows:

**Theorem (1.4).** Let $K$ be an intersection body and $L$ be a star body in $\mathbb{R}^n$. If

$$I_iK \subseteq I_iL,$$

then

$$\widetilde{W}_{n-1-i}(K) \leq \widetilde{W}_{n-1-i}(L), \quad \text{for} \quad 1 \leq i \leq n - 1,$$

with equality if and only if $K = L$.

**Theorem (1.5).** Let $K$ be centered star body and $L$ be star body in $\mathbb{R}^n$. If

$$I_iK = I_iL,$$

then

$$\widetilde{W}_{n-1-i}(K) \leq \widetilde{W}_{n-1-i}(L) \quad \text{for} \quad 1 \leq i \leq n - 1,$$

with equality if and only if $K = L$.

**Remark (1.6).** Let $i = n - 1$ in theorem (1.4) and theorem (1.5), then we get theorem (A) and theorem (B) immediately.
2. Notation and preliminary works

As usual, $S^{n-1}$ denotes the unit sphere, $B_n$ the unit ball in Euclidean $n$-space $\mathbb{R}^n$. The set of real-valued, continuous functions on $S^{n-1}$ will be denoted by $C(S^{n-1})$. The subset of $C(S^{n-1})$ that contains the even functions will be denoted by $C_e(S^{n-1})$. The subset of $C_e(S^{n-1})$ that contains the nonnegative functions shall be denoted by $C^+(S^{n-1})$. The subset of $C_e(S^{n-1})$ that contains the infinitely differentiable functions will be denoted by $C^\infty(S^{n-1})$.

If $f, g \in C(S^{n-1})$, then we define $\langle f, g \rangle$ by

$$\langle f, g \rangle = \frac{1}{n} \int_{S^{n-1}} f(u)g(u)du.$$

We shall use $| \cdot |_2$ to denote the norm on $C(S^{n-1})$ induced by this inner product; i.e., for $f \in C(S^{n-1})$, $|f|_2 = \sqrt{\langle f, f \rangle}$.

For a given function $f \in C_e(S^{n-1})$, the Radon transform [11] of $f$ on $S^{n-1}$, $Rf$, defined by

$$(Rf)(u) = \frac{1}{n-1} \int_{S^{n-1} \cap u^\perp} f(v)dv$$

for $u \in S^{n-1}$.

It is well known that the linear transformation

$$R: C_e(S^{n-1}) \to C_e(S^{n-1}),$$

is self-adjoint, i.e., if $f, g \in C_e(S^{n-1})$, then

$$\langle Rf, g \rangle = \langle f, Rg \rangle.$$

From the definition of the generalized class of intersection bodies (1.3) and Radon transform we have $\rho_{i, K}$ equals the Radon transform of $\rho^+_K$, that is,

$$\rho_{i, K} = R\rho^+_K.$$

Let $S^n$ denote the set of star bodies in $\mathbb{R}^n$. The subset of $S^n$ that contains the centered star bodies shall be denoted by $S^n_e$. Two star bodies $K, L \in S^n$ are said to be dilatate (of each other) if $\rho(K, u)/\rho(L, u)$ is independent of $u \in S^{n-1}$.

Let $L_i \in S^n(1 \leq i \leq n)$. The dual mixed volume $\tilde{V}(L_1, \ldots, L_n)$ is defined by

$$\tilde{V}(L_1, \ldots, L_n) = \frac{1}{n} \int_{S^{n-1}} \rho_{L_1}(u) \ldots \rho_{L_n}(u)du.$$

We use the notation $\tilde{V}(L_1, \ldots, L_m, i_m)$ for the dual mixed volume in which $L_j$ appears $i_j$ times. The dual quermassintegral $\tilde{W}_i(L)$ of $L$ is given by $\tilde{V}(L, n-i; B_n, i)$. Specially, $\tilde{W}_0(L) = V(L)$.

Let $K, L \in S^n$ and $0 \leq i < n - 1$. The dual Aleksandrov-Fenchel inequality [8], p.421; in the form most suitable for our purposes, states that

$$\tilde{V}(K, n-i-1; B_n, i; L)^{n-i} \leq \tilde{W}_i(K)^{n-i-1} \tilde{W}_i(L),$$

with equality if and only if $K$ is a dilatate of $L$. 
Let \( K \in S^n \) and \( i > 0 \). The \( i \)-chordal symmetral \( \tilde{\nabla}_i K \) of \( K \) is the centered star body defined by [8], p.235

\[
\rho_{\tilde{\nabla}_i K}(u) = \left( \frac{\rho_K(u)^i + \rho_K(-u)^i}{2} \right)^{\frac{1}{i}}.
\]

Applying Minkowski integral inequality, it follows immediately that for \( K \in S^n \) and \( 1 \leq i \leq n-1 \)

\[
\tilde{W}_{n-1-i}(\tilde{\nabla}_i K) \leq \tilde{W}_{n-1-i}(K).
\]

with equality if and only if \( K \) is centered.

From (2.5) and (2.7), it follows that for \( K \in S^n \) and \( M \in S^n_{c} \)

\[
\tilde{V}(\tilde{\nabla}_i K, i; B_n, n - 1 - i; M) = \tilde{V}(K, i; B_n, n - 1 - i; M).
\]

3. A generalization of the Busemann-Petty problem

We consider the following generalization of the Busemann-Petty problem: Consider two origin symmetric star bodies \( K \) and \( L \) in \( \mathbb{R}^n \). Fix \( 1 \leq i \leq n-1 \) and suppose that

\[
I_i K \subset I_i L.
\]

Does it follow that \( \tilde{W}_{n-1-i}(K) \leq \tilde{W}_{n-1-i}(L) \)?

When \( i = n - 1 \), condition (3.1) is equivalent to (1.2), so the answer is affirmative if \( n \leq 4 \) and negative if \( n \geq 5 \). In this section, we prove that the generalized Busemann-Petty problem has an affirmative answer if \( K \) is an intersection body, and that the existence of the body which is not an intersection body leads to a counterexample. We shall use \( \mathcal{I} \) to denote the set of intersection bodies.

**Theorem (3.2)**. Let \( K \in \mathcal{I}, L \in S^n \) and \( 1 \leq i \leq n-1 \). If

\[
I_i K \subset I_i L,
\]

then

\[
\tilde{W}_{n-1-i}(K) \leq \tilde{W}_{n-1-i}(L),
\]

with equality if and only if \( K = L \).

**Proof.** Since \( K \in \mathcal{I} \), there exists a star body \( M \), such that \( K = IM \), that is

\[
\rho_K = R \rho_M^{n-1}.
\]

By (1.3), (2.3) and (3.5), we get

\[
\langle \rho_{I_i K}, \rho_M^{n-1} \rangle = \langle R \rho_K^{i}, \rho_M^{n-1} \rangle = \langle \rho_K^{i}, \rho_M^{n-1} \rangle = \langle \rho_K^{i}, \rho_K \rangle = \tilde{W}_{n-1-i}(K).
\]

and

\[
\langle \rho_{I_i L}, \rho_M^{n-1} \rangle = \tilde{V}(L, i; B_n, n - 1 - i; K).
\]

By condition (3.3), we have

\[
\tilde{W}_{n-1-i}(K) \leq \tilde{V}(L, i; B_n, n - 1 - i; K).
\]

Therefore, by the dual Aleksandrov-Fenchel inequality (2.6) we get (3.4). By the equality condition of (2.6) and \( I_i K = I_i L \), we know equality in (3.4) hold if and only if \( K = L \).
A nature question to ask about theorem (3.2) is whether the class $I$ can be replaced by a larger subset of $S^n$. The following result shows that any such large subset would have to be a subset of $S^n_c$, even if in theorem (3.2) the class $S^n$ were replaced by $S^n_c$.

**Theorem (3.6).** If $K \in S^n$ is a star body which is not centered and $1 \leq i \leq n - 1$, then there exists a centered star body $L$, such that

$$I_i K \subset I_i L,$$

but

$$\tilde{W}_{n-1-i}(K) > \tilde{W}_{n-1-i}(L).$$

**Proof.** From (1.3) and (2.7), we know $\tilde{\nabla}_i K$ is the unique centered star body such that

$$I_i(\tilde{\nabla}_i K) = I_i K.$$

Since $K$ is not centered and $1 \leq i \leq n - 1$, we know from (2.8) that

$$\tilde{W}_{n-1-i}(\tilde{\nabla}_i K) < \tilde{W}_{n-1-i}(K).$$

Now put

$$L = \varepsilon \tilde{\nabla}_i K,$$

where $2\varepsilon^n = 1 + \tilde{W}_{n-1-i}(K)/\tilde{W}_{n-1-i}(\tilde{\nabla}_i K)$. Since $\varepsilon > 1$, we have

$$I_i L = \varepsilon^i I_i(\tilde{\nabla}_i K) = \varepsilon^i I_i K \supset I_i K,$$

and

$$\tilde{W}_{n-1-i}(L) = \varepsilon^{i+1} \tilde{W}_{n-1-i}(\tilde{\nabla}_i K) < \tilde{W}_{n-1-i}(K).$$

this complete the proof. 

**Theorem (3.8).** Let $L \in S^n_c$ be a star body whose radial function is in $C_\infty(S^{n-1})$ and positive. If $L$ is not the intersection body of a star body, then there is a centered star body $K$ such that

$$I_i K \subseteq I_i L,$$

but

$$\tilde{W}_{n-1-i}(K) > \tilde{W}_{n-1-i}(L).$$

**Proof.** Since $\rho_L \in C_\infty(S^{n-1})$, there exists (see [14]) an $f \in C_\epsilon(S^{n-1})$, such that

$$\rho_L = Rf.$$

Note that $f$ must assume negative values, otherwise $L$ would be the intersection body of star body whose radial function is $f^{1/n-1}$.

We choose a nonconstant function $F \in C_\infty(S^{n-1})$, such that

$$F(u) \geq 0, \quad \text{when} \quad f(u) < 0,$$

and

$$F(u) = 0, \quad \text{when} \quad f(u) \geq 0.$$

Since $F \in C_\infty(S^{n-1})$, there exists a function $g \in C_\epsilon(S^{n-1})$, such that

$$F = Rg.$$
Define a centered star body $K$ by
\[ \rho^i_K = \rho^i_L - \lambda g \]
where $\lambda > 0$ is chosen so that the right-hand side is always positive. Then
\[ \rho^i_{L,K} = R\rho^i_K = R(\rho^i_L - \lambda g) = \rho^i_{L,L} - \lambda F. \]
Note that from (3.10), (3.11) and (3.12) we see that $I_i K \neq I_i L$ and
\[ \rho^i_{L,K}(u) \leq \rho^i_{L,L}(u), \quad \text{when} \quad (u) < 0, \]
and
\[ \rho^i_{L,K}(u) = \rho^i_{L,L}(u), \quad \text{when} \quad f(u) \geq 0. \]
Now using the self-adjointness of $R$, we obtain
\[ \tilde{W}_{n-1-i}(L) - \tilde{V}(K, i; B_n, n - 1 - i; L) = \langle \rho^i_L - \rho^i_K, \rho_L \rangle = \langle R(\rho^i_L - \rho^i_K), f \rangle = \langle \rho^i_{L,L} - \rho^i_{L,K}, f \rangle \]
From (3.13) and (3.14), we have
\[ \tilde{W}_{n-1-i}(K) - \tilde{V}(K, i; B_n, n - 1 - i; L) \leq 0 \]
A simple application of dual Aleksandrov-Fenchel inequality (2.6) gives us
\[ \tilde{W}_{n-1-i}(K) > \tilde{W}_{n-1-i}(L). \]
This establishes the statement of the theorem.

The following theorem give another extension of the Funk section theorem.

**Theorem (3.15).** Let $K \in S^c_n$, $L \in S^n$ and $1 \leq i \leq n - 1$. If
\[ I_i K = I_i L, \]
then
\[ \tilde{W}_{n-1-i}(K) \leq \tilde{W}_{n-1-i}(L), \]
with equality if and only if $K = L$.

To prove the theorem (3.15), we first introduce the following lemma which characterizes the equality of the generalized class of intersection bodies in terms of dual mixed volumes.

**Lemma (3.16).** If $K, L \in S^n$ and $1 \leq i \leq n - 1$, then
\[ I_i K = I_i L, \]
if and only if
\[ \tilde{V}(K, i; B_n, n - 1 - i; M) = \tilde{V}(L, i; B_n, n - 1 - i; M) \]
for all $M \in S^c_n$.

**Proof.** From (2.9) and (3.7), we see that we may assume that $K, L \in S^c_n$.
Suppose that for all $M \in S^c_n$, (3.18) holds. Let $f \in C^+_1(S^{n-1})$, and define $M \in S^c_n$ by
\[ \rho_M = Rf. \]
From (2.1) and (2.5), we have
\[ \tilde{V}(K, i; B_n, n - 1 - i; M) = \langle \rho^i_K, \rho_M \rangle = \langle \rho^i_K, Rf \rangle, \]
and

\[ \widetilde{V}(L, i; B_n, n - 1 - i; M) = \langle \rho^i_L, \rho_M \rangle = \langle \rho^i_L, Rf \rangle, \]

Hence, from (2.3), (2.4) and (3.18), we have

\[ \langle \rho_{I, K}, f \rangle = \langle \rho_{I, L}, f \rangle. \]

Thus, for all \( f \in C_c^+(S^{n-1}) \)

\[ \langle \rho_{I, K} - \rho_{I, L}, f \rangle = 0. \]

But this must hold for all \( f \in C_c(S^{n-1}) \), since we can write an arbitrary function in \( C_c(S^{n-1}) \) as the difference of two functions in \( C_c^+(S^{n-1}) \). If we take \( \rho_{I, K} - \rho_{I, L} \) for \( f \), we get \( |\rho_{I, K} - \rho_{I, L}|^2 = 0 \), and hence \( I, K = I, L \).

Now suppose (3.17) holds and \( M \in S^n \). Suppose \( M \) is such that \( \rho_M \in R(C_c(S^{n-1})) \) and hence there exists an \( f \in C_c(S^{n-1}) \), such that

\[ \rho_M = Rf. \]

From (2.5), we have

\[ \widetilde{V}(K, i; B_n, n - 1 - i; M) = \langle \rho^i_K, \rho_M \rangle = \langle \rho^i_K, Rf \rangle, \]

and

\[ \widetilde{V}(L, i; B_n, n - 1 - i; M) = \langle \rho^i_L, \rho_M \rangle = \langle \rho^i_L, Rf \rangle. \]

If we use (2.3) and (2.4), we see that \( I, K = I, L \) implies that (3.18) must hold for all \( M \in S^n \) such that \( \rho_M \in R(C_c(S^{n-1})) \). Since \( R(C_c(S^{n-1})) \) is dense in \( C_c(S^{n-1}) \), and dual mixed volumes are continuous, it follows that (3.18) must hold for all \( M \in S^n \).

The proof of Theorem 3.5. Since \( K \in S^n \), let \( M = K \) in lemma (3.16), we have

\[ \widetilde{W}_{n-1-i}(K) = \widetilde{V}(L, i; B_n, n - 1 - i; K) \]

By the dual Aleksandrov-Fenchel inequality (2.6), we have

\[ \widetilde{W}_{n-1-i}(K) \leq \widetilde{W}_{n-1-i}(L), \]

The equality condition of (2.6) and \( I, K = I, L \) yeild the equality in theorem (3.15) if and only if \( K = L \).

Acknowledgment

The authors are most grateful to the referee for his valuable suggestions.

Received December 21, 2007

Final version received May 15, 2009

Zhao Lingzhi
Department of Mathematics
Nanjing Xiaozhuang University
Nanjing 211171
P. R. China
lzhzhao@163.com

Shen Yajun
Department of Applied Mathematics
Zhejiang Forestry University
REFERENCES


A NOTE ON NEARNESS SPREADS IN FRAMES

HLENGANI J. SIWEYA AND MARUTHANYANE J. MAKGERU

Abstract. Mathematical structures called spreads are extended to nearness frames and a nearness spread completion associated with these structures is constructed. There is a relative notion of uniform local connectedness which enjoys notable properties many of which play an important part in this construction. In fact, it is also shown that if \( h: (M, \mathcal{N}_M) \rightarrow (L, \mathcal{N}_L) \) is a dense surjection between nearness frames, then \( L \) is uniformly locally connected relative to \( h \).

1. Introduction

In an effort to keep this note short as far as is possible, we assume familiarity with nearness and uniform frames. However, those that are uncomfortable are referred to [1], [3], [6]. A standard reference for general knowledge of frames is [7].

A frame is a complete lattice \( L \) in which the following generalized distributive law holds:

\[
x \land (\bigvee M) = \bigvee \{x \land y \mid y \in M\},
\]

for each \( x \in L \) and \( M \subset L \); and a frame homomorphism is a map \( h: M \rightarrow L \) which preserves finitary meets (including the top element \( e \) and arbitrary joins (including the bottom element \( 0 \)). A frame homomorphism is dense if whenever \( h(x) = 0 \).

With reference to connectedness, we say: \( 0 \neq x \) in a frame \( L \) connected if whenever \( x = a \lor b \) with \( a \land b = 0 \) then either \( a = 0 \) or \( b = 0 \). The frame \( L \) is connected whenever its top \( e \) is connected, and \( L \) is locally connected if each \( x \in L \) is a join of connected \( y \in L \) with \( y \leq x \). A component of \( x \in L \) is a maximally connected \( y \leq x \in L \). See Baboolal and Banaschewski [2] and Chen [5].

A cover of a frame \( L \) is a subset \( A \) of \( L \) for which \( \bigvee A = e \). The collection of all covers of \( L \) is denoted \( \text{cov}(L) \). Given \( U, V \in \text{cov}(L) \) the cover \( U \) refines the cover \( V \) (written \( U \leq V \)) if for each \( u \in U \) there exists \( v \in V \) with \( u \leq v \). For a \( U \in \text{cov}(L) \), the x-star of an element \( x \in L \) relative to \( U \) is the set \( Ux = \bigvee \{y \in U \mid x \land y \neq 0\} \). A cover \( U \) star refines another cover \( V \in \text{cov}(L) \) (written \( U^* \leq V \)) if \( UU \leq V \) where \( UU = \{Ux \mid x \in U\} \).

If \( x, y \in L \) and \( \mathcal{N} \subseteq \text{cov}(L) \), we say that \( x \) is \( \mathcal{N} \)-uniformly below \( y \) (written \( x <_{\mathcal{N}} y \)) if \( Ux \leq y \) for some \( U \in \mathcal{N} \). A filter on \( \text{cov}(L) \) is called a nearness on \( L \) if

---

2000 Mathematics Subject Classification: 54D15, 54D20, 54E15.

Keywords and phrases: nearness frame spread, uniformly locally connected (relative to), locally connected frame.
it is an admissible system of covers in the sense that each \( x \in L \) is expressible in the form
\[
x = \bigvee \{ y \in L \mid y \prec_N x \}
\]
Together with a nearness \( N \) on the frame \( L \) the pair \((L, N)\) is a nearness frame. If in addition the nearness \( N \) satisfies the condition that: for each \( U \in N \) there is a \( V \in N \) satisfying \( U \ast \leq V \) then the pair \((L, N)\) is a uniform frame.

For an element \( x \in L \) we define its pseudo-complement \( x^* \) by
\[
x^* = \bigvee \{ y \in L \mid x \wedge y = 0 \};
\]
x is said to be rather below \( y \) (and we write \( x < y \)) if there exists a \( z \in L \) such that \( x \wedge z = 0 \) and \( y \vee z = e \) or, equivalently, if \( x^* \vee y = e \). The frame \( L \) is regular if each \( x \in L \) can be written as \( x = \bigvee \{ y \in L \mid y \prec x \} \).

In connection with nearness, it is known that a frame has a nearness iff it is regular (Banaschewski and Pultr [3]).

A nearness frame \((L, N_L)\) is uniformly locally connected if for each \( A \in N_L \) there exists a \( B \in N_L \) such that \( B \leq A \) with each \( b \in B \) connected (Ba-boolal and Banaschewski [4]). For a surjective homomorphism \( h : (L, N_L) \to (M, N_M) \) between nearness frames, we say \( M \) is uniformly locally connected relative to \( h \) if there exists a nearness basis \( B \) for \( N_L \) for which \( h[B] \) is connected for each \( B \in B \).

**Proposition (1.1).** For any dense surjection \( h : (M, N_M) \to (L, N_L) \) between nearness frames, the nearness frame \( L \) is uniformly locally connected iff \( L \) is uniformly locally connected relative to \( h \).

**Proof.** See [4], Proposition 2.6. \( \square \)

2. Nearness Spreads on frames

Recall [8] that a spread is a frame homomorphism \( h : M \to L \) between locally connected frames for which \( x \in L \) is a component of \( h(u) \) for some \( u \in M \). (In the rest of the article we will write \( x \leq_c h(u) \) to mean “\( x \) is a component of \( h(u) \)”.) In this article, we propose to work with a spread \((M, h, L)\) between locally connected regular frames; \( M \) carries the fine nearness \( Cov(M) \) consisting of all covers of \( M \). For each \( A \in Cov(M) \), set
\[
C_A = \{ x \in L \mid x \leq_c h(a), \text{ for some } a \in A \}.
\]

Nearness spreads themselves were introduced into nearness spaces by Siweya [9]. We now generalize such spreads into the setting of nearness frames as follows. In fact, a nearness spread completion is constructed—and it comes with the uniform spread completion of Baboolal and Siweya [4] as a special case.

**Proposition (2.1).** The set \( \{ C_A \mid A \in Cov(M) \} =: \mathcal{B}^h \text{ form a basis for a nearness } N^h \text{ on } L \text{ relative to which } L \text{ is uniformly locally connected, i.e. we have the following:}

(i) \( A \in Cov(M) \Rightarrow \bigvee C_A = e \);
(ii) \( C_{A_1}, C_{A_2} \in \mathcal{B}^h \Rightarrow \exists A_3 \in Cov(M), C_{A_3} \leq C_{A_1} \wedge C_{A_2} \).
Proof. Each \( C_A \in Cov(L) \) since

\[
e = \bigvee h[A] = \bigvee_{a \in A} h(a) \leq \bigvee_{a \in A} w (w \leq_c h(a)) = \bigvee_{a \in A} C_A.
\]

Given \( C_A, C_B \) of the above form, we set \( G = A \land B \). We will show that \( C_G \leq C_A \) and \( C_G \leq C_B \): If \( x \in C_G \) then \( x \leq_c h(u) \) for some \( u = a \land b \in G \). Therefore \( x \leq_c h(u) \leq h(a) \) and \( x \leq_c h(u) \leq h(b) \). Thus for some \( s, t \in L \) we have \( x \leq s \leq h(a) \) and \( x \leq t \leq h(b) \). In addition, for any \( h[A]x \leq y \) in \( L \) we find that \( C_Ax \leq y \): For, if \( z \in C_A \) with \( z \land x \neq 0 \) then \( z \leq_c h(u_x) \) for some \( u_x \in A \). Also, \( h(u_x) \land x \neq 0 \) implies that \( h(u_x) \leq h[A]x \leq y \) so that \( z \leq y \) and \( C_Ax \leq y \). Thus \( y = \bigvee \{ x \in L \mid C_Ax \leq y, \text{ for some } A \in Cov(M) \} \).

We will denote the nearness structure so formed (called a spread nearness) by \( \mathcal{N}^hL \) and \( h \) will be called a nearness spread (morphism) on \( M \).

Our definition of completeness of a nearness spread is inspired by that of a complete nearness frame [3]. In order to construct a nearness spread completion, we need

Definition (2.2). A nearness spread \( f : (M, \mathcal{N}M) \to (L, \mathcal{N}^hL) \) is said to be complete if, whenever \( g : (M, \mathcal{N}M) \to (N, \mathcal{N}^gN) \) is a nearness spread and \( h : N \to L \) is a dense surjection with \( L \) uniformly locally connected relative to \( h \) such that \( f = h \circ g \), then \( h \) is an isomorphism. A nearness spread completion of a nearness spread \( f : M \to L \) is a complete nearness spread \( g : M \to N \) with a dense surjection \( h : N \to L \) for which \( L \) is uniformly locally connected relative to \( h \) such that \( f = h \circ g \) holds.

The nearness spread completion discussed herein assumes familiarity with Banaschewski-Pultr nearness frame completion as well as the associated notation used in [3]. Some of these details are as follows: \( \mathcal{D}L \) denotes the frame of all non-empty downsets of \( L \), that is, consisting of all \( U \subset L \) such that \( 0 \in U \), \( x \leq y \), \( y \in U \Rightarrow U \), partially ordered by inclusion, so that meet is intersection and join union. Then, let \( \mathcal{RL} \) denote the closure system in \( \mathcal{D}L \) such that \( U \in \mathcal{RL} \) holds iff \( l_0 : \mathcal{D}L \to \mathcal{D}L \) defined by setting \( l_0(U) = \{ a \in L \mid \{ x \in L \mid x \leq a \} \subset U \} \cup \ldots \cup \{ a \in L \mid \{ a \land x \mid X \subset C \} \subset U \} \) for some \( C \in \mathcal{RL} \). (Here \( \land \) denotes the “strong” inclusion relative to \( \mathcal{RL} \).) Then \( l_0 \) satisfies:

(i) \( U \subset l_0(U) \);
(ii) \( U_1 \subset U_2 \Rightarrow l_0(U_1) \subset l_0(U_2) \);
(iii) \( U_1, U_2 \in \mathcal{D}L \Rightarrow l_0(U_1) \cap U_2 \subset l_0(U_1 \cap U_2) \).

It follows then that the closure operator \( l \) on \( \mathcal{D}L \) determined by \( \mathcal{RL} \) preserves binary intersections, so that \( \mathcal{RL} \) is a frame.

Furthermore, the frame homomorphism \( \bigvee : \mathcal{D}L \to L \) given by taking join factors through the map \( l_L : \mathcal{D}L \to \mathcal{RL} \). The map \( \mathcal{RL} \to L \) determined by the factorization of \( \bigvee : \mathcal{D}L \to L \) through \( l : \mathcal{D}L \to \mathcal{RL} \) is the join map \( \delta_L \) restricted
to \( \mathcal{R}L \). Thus, \( \delta_L : \mathcal{R}L \to L \) is a frame homomorphism. Since \( l(\downarrow a)_{L} := (\downarrow a)_{L} \) for all \( a \in L \), where \( (\downarrow a)_{L} := \{ x \in L \mid x \leq a \} \), it is obvious that the right adjoint \( r_{L} : L \to \mathcal{R}L \) to the join map \( \mathcal{R}L \to L \) is given by \( r_{L}(a) := (\downarrow a)_{L} \). We shall use subscripts \( L \) to emphasize the closure operator \( l_{L} : \mathcal{R}L \to \mathcal{R}L \), the join homomorphism \( \delta_{L} : \mathcal{R}L \to L \) and its right adjoint \( r_{L} : L \to \mathcal{R}L \) corresponding to the nearness frame \( L \). In what follows then, unless specified otherwise, \( h : (\mathcal{R}M) \to (L, \mathcal{R}hL) \) is a nearness spread.

Now consider, for each \( A \in \mathcal{R}M \), the collection (in \( \mathcal{R}L \))

\[
C^{L}[A] = \{ (l \downarrow)_{L}(x) \in \mathcal{R}L \mid (l \downarrow)_{L}(x) \leq \mathcal{R}h(l \downarrow)_{M}(a), \text{ where } x \leq c h(a) \},
\]

for some \( a \in A \).

**Proposition (2.3).** The collection

\[
\{ C^{L}[A] \mid A \in \text{Cov}(M) \}
\]

is a basis for a nearness structure relative to which \( \mathcal{R}L \) is uniformly locally connected.

**Proof.** (1) Since \( A \in \text{Cov}(M) \) we have \( \bigcup C^{L}[A] = e. \)

(2) Given \( C^{L}[A] \), \( C^{L}[B] \), consider \( C^{L}[D] \) where \( D = A \land B \). We claim that \( C^{L}[D] \subseteq C^{L}[A] \) and \( C^{L}[D] \subseteq C^{L}[B] \). For, if \( (l \downarrow)_{L}(x) \in C^{L}[D] \), it holds that \( x \leq c h(a) \) for some \( A \in \text{Cov}(M) \) and \( a = m \land n \) with \( m \in A \), \( n \in B \) from which it is not hard to prove that \( (l \downarrow)_{L}(x) \leq \mathcal{R}h(l \downarrow)_{M}(a) \) so that \( (l \downarrow)_{L}(x) \in C^{L}[A] \) and \( (l \downarrow)_{L}(x) \in C^{L}[B] \), which takes care of our claim.

(3) Given \( y \in L \), we have

\[
y = \bigvee \{ x \in L \mid h[A]x \leq y, \text{ for some } A \in \text{Cov}(M) \}.
\]

We claim that \( C^{L}[A]x \leq y \): For, if \( (l \downarrow)_{L}(z) \in C^{L}[A] \) with \( (l \downarrow)_{L}(z) \land (l \downarrow)_{L}(x) \neq 0 \) we can show that \( z \leq c h(a_{z}) \leq y \) because \( h[A]x \leq y \) for some \( a_{z} \in A \) and so \( C^{L}[A]x \leq y. \)

**Corollary (2.4).** The nearness map \( \mathcal{R}h : \mathcal{R}M \to \mathcal{R}L \) making the following rectangle commutative is a nearness spread:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\mathcal{R}M \\
\downarrow \delta_{M} \\
M \\
\downarrow h \\
L
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\mathcal{R}L \\
\downarrow \delta_{L} \\
L
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\mathcal{R}M \xrightarrow{\mathcal{R}h} \mathcal{R}L \\
\end{array}
\end{array}
\]

**Remark** (2.5). We note that a nearness frame \( L \) is complete iff whenever \( e \in U, \ U \subseteq \mathcal{R}L \) then \( \bigvee U = e \) holds. Moreover, any fine nearness frame is complete, hence the nearness frame \((L, \text{Cov}(L))\) is complete.

Returning to a nearness spread completion, recall that a fine nearness frame is complete \([3]\), so the fine nearness frame \((L, \text{Cov}(L))\) is complete. Accordingly, the dense surjection \( \delta_{L} : \mathcal{R}L \to L \) is an isomorphism. Here is our main result.
Theorem (2.6). The triple \((M, \mathcal{R}h \circ \delta_M^{-1}, L)\) together with the dense surjection \(\delta_L: \mathcal{R}L \to L\) is a nearness spread completion of the nearness spread \(h: M \to L\) (with \(g = \mathcal{R}h \circ \delta_M^{-1}\) in the commutative triangle):

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
M & \xrightarrow{h} & L \\
\downarrow{g} & & \downarrow{\delta_L} \\
\mathcal{R}L
\end{array}
\]

Proof. Also, the uniqueness of \(\mathcal{R}L\) implies that of \(\mathcal{R}h \circ \delta_M^{-1}\).
Now, we have:
1) Since \(L\) is uniformly locally connected (because \(h\) is a nearness spread) and since \(\delta_L: \mathcal{R}L \to L\) is a dense surjection, it follows that \(L\) is locally connected relative to \(\delta_L\) (Proposition (1.1)).
2) For commutativity, we find that

\[
\delta_L \circ (\mathcal{R}h \circ \delta_M^{-1}) = (\delta_L \circ \mathcal{R}h) \circ \delta_M^{-1} = (h \circ \delta_M) \circ \delta_M^{-1} = h \circ (\delta_M \circ \delta_M^{-1}) = h.
\]

3) We now show that \(\mathcal{R}h \circ \delta_M^{-1}\) is a complete nearness spread: let \((M, k, N)\) be a nearness spread and let \(f: N \to \mathcal{R}L\) be a dense surjection where \(\mathcal{R}L\) is uniformly locally connected relative to \(f\) such that \(g = f \circ k\) (with \(g = \mathcal{R}h \circ \delta_M^{-1}\)):

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
M & \xrightarrow{g} & \mathcal{R}L \\
\downarrow{k} & & \downarrow{f} \\
N
\end{array}
\]

Then the dense surjection \(f\) is an isomorphism since \(\mathcal{R}L\) is completion, hence \(\mathcal{R}h \circ \delta_M^{-1}\) is complete.
4) It remains to show that this completion \(\mathcal{R}h \circ \delta_M^{-1}\) is unique up to equivalence. To this end, suppose that \((r, P, s)\) were another nearness spread completion of \((M, h, L)\) where \(P\) is a nearness completion of \(M\). By uniqueness of \(\mathcal{R}L\) (being the nearness completion of \(L\)), there is an isomorphism \(k: \mathcal{R}L \to P\) such that \(s \circ k = \delta_L\) (with \(t = \mathcal{R}h \circ \delta_M^{-1}\)):

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
M & \xrightarrow{t} & \mathcal{R}L \\
\downarrow{id_M} & & \downarrow{\delta_L} \\
M & \xrightarrow{r} & P \\
\downarrow{k} & & \downarrow{s} \\
P & \xrightarrow{id_L} & L
\end{array}
\]
The following calculations follow:
\[
\begin{align*}
s \circ (k \circ \mathcal{Rh} \circ \delta_M^{-1}) &= (s \circ k) \circ (\mathcal{Rh} \circ \delta_M^{-1}) \\
&= \delta_L \circ (\mathcal{Rh} \circ \delta_M^{-1}) \\
&= h \\
&= s \circ r.
\end{align*}
\]
Since \(s\) is a monomorphism, we have
\[
k \circ (\mathcal{Rh} \circ \delta_M^{-1}) = r
\]
so that \((\mathcal{Rh} \circ \delta_M^{-1}, \mathcal{RL}, \gamma_L)\) is equivalent to \((r, P, s)\).

\[\square\]

Acknowledgment

We are indebted to the unknown referee for comments and a suggestion that improved this version of the paper.

Received May 28, 2008

Final version received January 30, 2009

Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics
University of Limpopo
Private Bag X1106
Sovenga 0727
South Africa
siweyah@ul.ac.za

References

EXPONENT AND CELL STRUCTURE OF THE $v_1$-PERIODIC SPECTRA ASSOCIATED TO EXCEPTIONAL LIE GROUPS

XIAOXUE LI

ABSTRACT. Let $\Phi X$ be the $v_1$-periodic spectrum associated to a topological space $X$, which satisfies $\pi_*(\Phi X) = v^{-1}_1\pi_*(X; p)$. Bousfield proved that the $p$-exponent of the spectrum $\Phi X$ is the same as the $p$-exponent of the group $K^1(\Phi X) = PK^1(X)/\phi^p$. We calculate the summand decomposition of $K^1(\Phi X)$ and get the $p$-exponent as the largest summand. We accomplish this for all exceptional Lie groups $X$ and all odd primes $p$ and compare them with the known $p$-exponent of the homotopy group $\pi_*(\Phi X)$. We found that most of the time they differ by 1 or 2.

Our second result is to interpret the way the spectrum $\Phi X$ is built. The spectrum $\Phi X$ can be built up from various $\Phi S^{2i+1}$ by fibrations. For all exceptional Lie groups at all odd primes $p$, we obtain a nice picture of how the $\Phi S^{2i+1}$'s are attached together to build $\Phi X$.

1. Introduction

The $v_1$-periodic spectrum $\Phi X$, introduced by Bousfield, is a $K/p_*$-local spectrum associated to a topological space $X$, satisfying, for the spaces studied here, $\pi_*(\Phi X) \approx v^{-1}_1\pi_*(X; p)$, the $v_1$-periodic homotopy groups ([6]). In this paper we analyze certain properties of $\Phi X$ when $X$ is an exceptional Lie group and $p$ is an odd prime.

The first property that we analyze is the $p$-exponent of the spectrum $\Phi X$. In [6], 9.5; Bousfield conjectured the value of the $p$-exponent of $\Phi SU(n)$, and M. Fisher proved this conjecture [8]. We use a method, different from Fisher’s, involving an algorithm on the Adams operations, which allows us to compute the $p$-exponent of $\Phi X$ for all exceptional Lie groups $X$ at all odd primes $p$.

The second property we analyze is the cell structure of $\Phi X$. We prove that a spectrum $\Phi X$ can be built up by fibrations from $\Phi S^{2i+1}$’s. How these $\Phi S^{2i+1}$ cells are attached together is quite interesting. We determine the attaching maps between the $\Phi S^{2i+1}$’s for all exceptional Lie groups $X$ at all odd primes $p$.

The second property we analyze is the cell structure of $\Phi X$. We prove that a spectrum $\Phi X$ can be built up by fibrations from $\Phi S^{2i+1}$’s. How these $\Phi S^{2i+1}$ cells are attached together is quite interesting. We determine the attaching maps between the $\Phi S^{2i+1}$’s for all exceptional Lie groups $X$ at all odd primes $p$ by studying the Adams operations in the $K$-theory of $\Phi X$ and the $v_1$-periodic homotopy groups in which the attaching maps lie.

This paper is divided into four sections. Our main theorems, (1.1), (1.2), and (1.3) are contained in the introductory first section. In Section 2 we begin by reviewing some results from Bousfield’s paper [6]. We then calculate the $p$-exponent of $\Phi X$ for the pairs $(X, p)$ with $X$ an exceptional Lie group and $p$ an odd prime. In Section 3 we first prove in Theorem 3.4 that the spectrum $\Phi X$ can be built up from various $\Phi S^{2i+1}$. In building $\Phi X$, the key is to find the

2000 Mathematics Subject Classification: Primary 55P42, secondary 55S25.

Keywords and phrases: exponents, $K/p_*$-local spectra, fibrations, Adams operations, exceptional Lie groups.
attaching maps between the cells. These attaching maps are detected by the Adams operations and $v_1^{-1} \pi_\ast(X)$. We first obtain the attaching maps for $\Phi X$ when $X$ is torsion-free. These are simpler than the torsion cases because the exceptional Lie groups that are torsion-free decompose as products of spaces of the form $B(2n_1 + 1, \ldots, 2n_r + 1)$ and odd dimensional spheres when localized at $p$. The torsion exceptional Lie groups consist of $(F_4, 3)$, $(E_6, 3)$, $(E_7, 3)$, $(E_8, 5)$, and $(E_8, 3)$. The cell structure of the associated spectra are carried out in Section 4. Each case is different and requires different techniques. Throughout this paper, $p$ is an odd prime, and $q = 2(p - 1)$.

We state our main results in Theorem (1.1), (1.2), and (1.3).

The $p$-exponent of a spectrum $E$ is the smallest $e$ such that $p^e$ times the identity map $E \to E$ is trivial. We denote it by $\exp_p(E)$. We calculate the $p$-exponents of the $v_1$-periodic spectra $\Phi X$ of exceptional Lie groups $X$ for each odd prime $p$, and compare them with the known $p$-exponents of the homotopy groups $\pi_\ast(\Phi X)$. We also compute the whole group $K^1(\Phi X)$. Throughout this paper, the $K$-theory groups always have $p$-adic coefficients $\hat{\mathbb{Z}}_p$.

In Theorem (1.1), the third column, $\exp_p(\Phi X)$, is the principal focus of this part of our work.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$X$</th>
<th>$p$</th>
<th>$\exp_p(\Phi X)$</th>
<th>$\exp_p(\pi_\ast(\Phi X))$</th>
<th>$K^1(\Phi X)$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$G_2$</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$&gt; 5$</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$F_4$</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>4, 8, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>6, 6, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>8, 4, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12, 5, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$&gt; 11$</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>1, 5, 7, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$E_6$</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3, 4, 8, 9, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>3, 9, 6, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>8, 4, 12, 4, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12, 5, 7, 4, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$&gt; 11$</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>1, 4, 5, 7, 8, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$E_7$</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>4, 9, 12, 16, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>3, 6, 8, 12, 14, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>3, 7, 9, 11, 14, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>12, 6, 18, 5, 9, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>14, 4, 18, 7, 9, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>18, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$&gt; 17$</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>1, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$E_8$</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>3, 11, 16, 23, 28, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>4, 10, 12, 17, 20, 26, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>6, 18, 12, 24, 18, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>12, 6, 18, 12, 24, 18, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>14, 6, 20, 10, 24, 16, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>18, 6, 24, 12, 30, 11, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>20, 10, 30, 7, 14, 13, 17, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>24, 6, 30, 11, 13, 17, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>29</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>30, 7, 11, 13, 17, 19, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$&gt; 29$</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>1, 7, 11, 13, 17, 19, 23, 29</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1. Exponents of $\Phi X$
THEOREM (1.1). For the exceptional Lie groups $X$ and odd primes $p$, the exponents of $\Phi X$ and of its homotopy groups are as listed in Table (1), which also includes the $p$-exponents of the summands of $K^1(\Phi X)$.

The homotopy $p$-exponent of $\Phi X$, which is the least power of $p$ that annihilates the $p$-torsion in $\pi_*(\Phi X)$, is listed in the fourth column in this table. These homotopy exponents of $\Phi X$ are read off from Davis’ papers ([7],[2],[3],[4]) and are included for comparison. The other main result is the cell structure of $\Phi X$. Our results are shown in Theorem (1.2) for torsion free $X$ and in Theorem (1.3) for torsion $X$.

THEOREM (1.2). Let $X$ be an exceptional Lie group that is torsion free. The spectrum $\Phi X$ can be built by fibrations from $\Phi S^{2^i+1}$ according to the scheme in Table (2).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$X$</th>
<th>$p$</th>
<th>Cell Structure of $\Phi X$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$G_2$</td>
<td>3</td>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Cell Structure Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Cell Structure Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$F_4$</td>
<td>5</td>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Cell Structure Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Cell Structure Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11</td>
<td><img src="image5" alt="Cell Structure Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$E_6$</td>
<td>5</td>
<td><img src="image6" alt="Cell Structure Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
<td><img src="image7" alt="Cell Structure Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11</td>
<td><img src="image8" alt="Cell Structure Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$E_7$</td>
<td>5</td>
<td><img src="image9" alt="Cell Structure Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
<td><img src="image10" alt="Cell Structure Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11</td>
<td><img src="image11" alt="Cell Structure Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13</td>
<td><img src="image12" alt="Cell Structure Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17</td>
<td><img src="image13" alt="Cell Structure Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$E_8$</td>
<td>7</td>
<td><img src="image14" alt="Cell Structure Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11</td>
<td><img src="image15" alt="Cell Structure Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13</td>
<td><img src="image16" alt="Cell Structure Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17</td>
<td><img src="image17" alt="Cell Structure Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19</td>
<td><img src="image18" alt="Cell Structure Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23</td>
<td><img src="image19" alt="Cell Structure Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>29</td>
<td><img src="image20" alt="Cell Structure Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Table 2. Cell Structure - Torsion free cases*
In the above table and later in this paper, a straight line connecting two cells denotes an attaching map \( \alpha_1 \). The circled number notation is explained in the paragraph surrounding (3.10).

**Theorem (1.3).** Let \( X \) be a torsion exceptional Lie group. The spectrum \( \Phi X \) can be built by fibrations from \( \Phi S^{2r+1} \) according to the scheme in Table 3.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>( X )</th>
<th>( p )</th>
<th>Cell Structure of ( \Phi X )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( F_4 )</td>
<td>3</td>
<td><img src="#" alt="Diagram for F_4" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( E_6 )</td>
<td>3</td>
<td><img src="#" alt="Diagram for E_6" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( E_7 )</td>
<td>3</td>
<td><img src="#" alt="Diagram for E_7" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( E_8 )</td>
<td>3</td>
<td><img src="#" alt="Diagram for E_8" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td><img src="#" alt="Diagram for E_8" /></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 3.** Cell Structure - torsion cases

### 2. The p-exponent of \( \Phi X \)

In this section we prove Theorem (1.1). That is, we calculate the \( p \)-exponent of the \( v_1 \)-periodic spectrum \( \Phi X \) for all the pairs \((X, p)\) with \( X \) an exceptional Lie group and \( p \) an odd prime. We begin with the definition of the functor \( \Phi \) and some mod \( p \) \( K \)-theory localization results due to Bousfield.

In [6], Bousfield introduced a functor from the homotopy category of pointed \( CW \)-complexes to the category of \( K/p^* \)-local spectra.

**Definition (2.1) ([6], 7.2).** There is a functor \( \Phi: Ho_\ast \rightarrow S \), where \( Ho_\ast \) is the homotopy category of pointed \( CW \)-complexes and \( S \) is the category of \( K/p^* \)-local spectra, such that:

1. For a space \( Y \in Ho_\ast \) and finite \( p \)-torsion spectrum \( W \in S \), there is a natural isomorphism \( v_1^{-1} \pi_\ast(Y; W) \cong [W, \Phi Y] \);
2. \( \Phi Y \) is \( K/p^* \)-local for each \( Y \in Ho_\ast \);
3. For a spectrum \( E \), there is a natural equivalence \( \Phi(\Omega_\ast E) \cong E_{K/p^*} \);
4. \( \Phi \) preserves homotopy fiber sequences.

**Definition (2.2) ([6], 2.6).** A finite stable \( p \)-adic Adams module is a finite abelian \( p \)-group \( G \) with endomorphisms \( \psi^k: G \rightarrow G \) for \( k \in \mathbb{Z} - p\mathbb{Z} \) such that:

1. \( \psi^1 = Id \) and \( \psi^j \psi^k = \psi^{jk} \) for all \( j, k \in \mathbb{Z} - p\mathbb{Z} \);
2. there exists an integer \( n \geq 1 \) such that \( \psi^k = \psi^{k+p^n j} \) on \( G \) for all \( k \in \mathbb{Z} - p\mathbb{Z} \) and \( j \in \mathbb{Z} \).

Here \( \mathbb{A} \) denote the abelian category of stable \( p \)-adic Adams modules.

For a stable \( p \)-adic Adams module \( M \), there exists a homotopically unique \( K/p_* \)-local spectrum \( \mathcal{M}(M, 1) \) with \( K^1(\mathcal{M}(M, 1); \mathbb{Z}_p) \cong M \) and \( K^0(\mathcal{M}(M, 1); \mathbb{Z}_p) \cong 0 \). Bousfield also proved

**Theorem (2.3)** ([6], 8.1). If \( X \) is a connected \( K/p_* \)-durable space (e.g. a connected \( H \)-space) with \( K^*(X; \hat{\mathcal{Z}}_p) \cong \hat{\Lambda}(M) \) for a regular torsion-free \( p \)-adic Adams module \( M \subset K^1(X; \hat{\mathcal{Z}}_p) \), then \( \Phi X \) is the homotopy fiber of the map \( M(\psi^p, 1): \mathcal{M}(M, 1) \to \mathcal{M}(M, 1) \). In particular, if \( \psi^p: M \to M \) is monic, then \( \Phi X \cong \mathcal{M}(M/\psi^p, 1) \).

If \( X \) is a compact Lie group, Hodgkin ([9]) proved that

\[
K^*(X) = \Lambda[\beta_1, \ldots, \beta_\ell].
\]

This ensures that a compact Lie group \( X \) satisfies the hypothesis in Theorem (2.3). Therefore \( \Phi X \) is a \( K\hat{\mathcal{Z}}_p \)-Moore Spectrum \( \mathcal{M}(M/\psi^p, 1) \), where \( M = PK^1(X, \hat{\mathcal{Z}}_p) \subset K^1(X, \hat{\mathcal{Z}}_p) \). i.e, \( \Phi X \cong \mathcal{M}(PK^1(X)/\psi^p, 1) \). Here \( P \) denotes the primitives. This equivalence suggests an algebraic way to obtain the \( p \)-exponent of the spectrum \( \Phi X \) by finding the \( p \)-exponent of the stable Adams module in \( \mathcal{M}(PK^1(X)/\psi^p, 1) \).

**Theorem (2.4)** ([6], 8.2). For a stable \( p \)-adic Adams module \( G \) and a spectrum \( E \) with \( K^0(E; \hat{\mathcal{Z}}_p) = 0 \), there is a splittable short exact sequence

\[
0 \to \text{Ext}^2_{\mathcal{A}}(G, K^1(\Sigma^2 E; \hat{\mathcal{Z}}_p)) \to [E, \mathcal{M}(G, 1)] \to \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(G, K^1(E, \hat{\mathcal{Z}}_p)) \to 0
\]

and an isomorphism

\[
(2.5) \quad [\Sigma E, \mathcal{M}(G, 1)] \cong \text{Ext}^1_{\mathcal{A}}(G, K^1(\Sigma^2 E; \hat{\mathcal{Z}}_p)).
\]

This theorem implies that there is a surjective map:

\[
[\Phi X, \Phi X] \to \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(PK^1(X)/\psi^p, PK^1(X)/\psi^p).
\]

Moreover, Bousfield observes on [6], p.1245; that this is an isomorphism as long as \( PK^1(X)/\psi^p \) is torsion-free. If \( p^e(\text{Ext}_{\mathcal{A}}^1(G, PK^1(X)/\psi^p)) = 0 \) for some \( e \geq 1 \), then \( p^e \text{Ext}_{\mathcal{A}}^1(G, PK^1(X)/\psi^p) \cong 0 \). This implies that the \( p \)-exponent of the spectrum \( \Phi X \) is the same as the \( p \)-exponent of \( PK^1(X)/\psi^p = K^1(\Phi X) \), which is a finite abelian \( p \)-group in our case. So we calculate the summand decomposition of \( PK^1(X)/\psi^p = \bigoplus \mathbb{Z}/p^{e_i} \) and get the \( p \)-exponent of \( \Phi X \) as the largest exponent.

We now proceed to calculate \( \text{Ext}^1_{\mathcal{A}}(\Phi X) \) for all \( X \) that are exceptional Lie groups and all odd primes \( p \). We consider first the quasi \( p \)-regular cases.

**Calculation of \( \text{exp}_{p}^e(\Phi X) \) for quasi \( p \)-regular cases.**

**Definition (2.6).** Let \( B(2n + 1, 2n + 1 + q) \) be the \( S^{2n+1} \)-bundle over \( S^{2n+2p-1} \) such that

\[
H^*(B(2n + 1, 2n + 1 + q); \mathbb{Z}_p) \cong \Lambda(x_{2n+1}, p^1 x_{2n+1}).
\]
The Lie group $G$ is called quasi $p$-regular iff there exists a map from a product of sphere-bundles over spheres of type $B(2n + 1, 2n + 1 + q)$ and spheres into $G$ such that it induces isomorphisms of cohomology with $\mathbb{Z}/p$-coefficients.

Wilkerson [14], Mimura, Nishida, and Toda [11] gave the mod $p$ decompositions of exceptional Lie groups when they are torsion-free. The result was stated in the splitting theorem [2], 1.1; upon which we will be relying through Section 2 and Section 3. By the above definition and [2], 1.1; quasi $p$-regular Lie groups, when localized at $p$, split into a product of $B(2n + 1, 2n + 1 + q)$ and/or spheres. These are $G_2, F_4, E_6$ when $p \geq 5$, and $E_7, E_8$ when $p \geq 11$. We find a formula for $\exp_p(\Phi B(2n + 1, 2n + 1 + q))$ for all $n$ and odd $p$.

**Proposition (2.7).** Let $B = B(2n + 1, 2n + 1 + q)$, and $q = 2(p - 1)$. Then $\exp_p(\Phi B) = n + p$.

**Proof.** In the sphere bundle $S^{2n+1} \to B \to S^{2n+1+q}$, the inclusion map $S^{2n+1} \cup e^{2n+1+q} \to B$ induces an isomorphism $K^1(S^{2n+1} \cup e^{2n+1+q}) \to \mathbb{Q}K^1(B)$, where $\mathbb{Q}$ denotes the indecomposables. So the Adams operations on $\mathbb{Q}K^1(B)$ are the same as the Adams operations on $K^1(S^{2n+1} \cup e^{2n+1+q})$. Adams [1], 7.5; tells that $\psi^p$ in $K(S^{2n} \cup e^{2n+q})$ is given by

$$\psi^p(x) = p^n x + \lambda(p^{n+p-1} - p^n)y,$$

$$\psi^p(y) = p^{n+p-1}y.$$ 

Here $\lambda$ and the $e$-invariant are equal by [1], 7.8; and the $e$-invariant, in particular, is $\frac{1}{p}$ according to [1], 12.4. Hence the Adams operations in $B = B(2n + 1, 2n + 1 + q)$ are as below.

$$\psi^p(x) = p^n x + \frac{u}{p} p^n(p^{p-1} - 1)y$$

$$\psi^p(y) = p^{n+p-1}y.$$ 

Here the coefficient $u/p$, with $u$ a unit, can result from a different choice of generator. To calculate the $p$-exponent of $\Phi B(2n + 1, 2n + 1 + q)$, we consider $\mathbb{Q}K^1(B)/\psi^p$, which is an abelian group represented by two generators $x$ and $y$ with relations

$$p^n x + u'p^{n-1}y = 0,$$

$$p^{n+p-1}y = 0,$$

where $u' = u(p^{p-1} - 1)$ is a unit.

Subtract from the second equation the first one multiplied by $\frac{1}{u'} p^n$. They become

$$p^{n-1}(\frac{1}{u'} px + y) = 0,$$

$$-\frac{1}{u'} p^{n+p} x = 0.$$
This implies that the abelian group \( M/\psi^p \) is a direct sum of \( \mathbb{Z}/p^{n-1} \oplus \mathbb{Z}/p^{n+p} \) generated by \( 1 \psi px + y \) and \( x \). Therefore
\[
\exp_p(\Phi B(2n + 1, 2n + 1 + q)) = n + p.
\]

The results for \( \exp_p(\Phi X) \) in Theorem (1.1) follow from Proposition (2.7) and [2], 1.1. For example, \( F_4 \) when localized at 5 is split into \( B(3, 11) \times B(15, 23) \).

By Proposition (2.7), \( \exp_5(\Phi B(3, 11)) = 6 \), and \( \exp_5(\Phi B(15, 23)) = 12 \). Thus \( \exp_5(\Phi F_4) = \max\{6, 12\} = 12 \).

**Calculation of \( \exp_p(\Phi X) \) for non-quasi \( p \)-regular cases**

The non-quasi \( p \)-regular cases consist of \( (G_2; 3), (F_4; 3), (E_6; 3), (E_7; 3), (E_7; 5), (E_7; 7), (E_8; 3), (E_8; 5), (E_8; 7) \). We calculate the \( p \)-exponent for \( (\Phi E_7; 5) \) to illustrate the method.

Since \( K^1(\Phi E_7) = PK^1(E_7)/\psi_5 \), we need the Adams operation \( \psi_5 \) in \( PK^1(E_7) \) localized at 5. First, the matrix whose rows are the eigenvectors of \( \psi_2 \) acting on \( PK^1(E_7) \) and written in terms of a standard basis such as that in [7], 2.6; is given in (2.8), an analogue of the transpose of [7], 3.2. The matrix (2.8) was calculated using LIE and Maple by Davis during his work on [7].

The eigenvectors which satisfy \( \psi^2v_i = 2^iv_i \) correspond to the sphere factors in a rational product decomposition of \( E_7 \), and hence also satisfy \( \psi^kv_i = k^iv_i \). See [7], (3.1) and (3.4).

The determinant turns out to be
\[
(2.9) \quad 2^{31}3^{16}5^77^411^213^217.
\]

When localized at 5, the eigenvectors in (2.8) do not span \( PK^1(E_7) \) since there is a factor of 5\(^7\) in the determinant. The following algorithm is to get rid of the factor 5\(^7\).

Let \( v_i \) be the vector formed by the \( i \)th row in (2.8). Since \( w_2 := (4v_2 - v_4)/5 \), \( w_5 := (4v_3 - v_5)/5 \), \( w_4 := (v_4 - v_6)/5 \), and \( w_6 := (v_6 - v_7)/5 \) are integral, we replace \( v_2, v_3, v_4, \) and \( v_6 \) by \( w_2, w_3, w_4, \) and \( w_6 \). Let \( M_2 \) denote the matrix \( ([v_1, w_2, w_3, w_4, v_5, w_5, v_7]) \), where \( v_1 \), etc., denote rows. Its determinant equals (2.9) divided by 5\(^4\). We then repeat this process twice more to get rid of the remaining 5\(^2\) factor of the determinant. Replacing \( w_2 \) and \( w_4 \) by \( x_2 := (2w_2 + 3w_4 - v_7)/5 \) and \( x_4 := (w_4 - w_6)/5 \) we get \( M_3 := ([v_1, x_2, w_3, x_4, v_5, w_5, v_7]) \). Then replace \( v_1 \) by \( z_1 := (3v_1 + 2x_2 + x_4 + 2w_5 - v_7)/5 \) to get \( M_4 := ([z_1, x_2, w_3, x_4, v_5, w_6, v_7]) \), whose determinant is not divisible by 5 and so is a unit over \( \mathbb{Z}_5 \). Therefore the rows of \( M_4 \) span \( PK^1(E_7)_{(5)} \) and form a basis. With this basis, for instance,
\[ \psi^k(x_4) = \psi^k((w_4 - w_6)/5) \]
\[ = \psi^k(\frac{1}{25}v_4 - \frac{2}{25}v_6 + \frac{1}{25}v_7) \]
\[ = \frac{1}{25}\psi^k(v_4) - \frac{2}{25}\psi^k(v_6) + \frac{1}{25}\psi^k(v_7) \]
\[ = \frac{1}{25}k^9v_4 - \frac{2}{25}k^{13}v_6 + \frac{1}{25}k^{17}v_7 \]
\[ = \frac{1}{25}k^9(25x_4 + 10w_6 + v_7) - \frac{2}{25}k^{13}(5w_6 + v_7) + \frac{1}{25}k^{17}v_7 \]
\[ = k^9x_4 + \frac{2}{5}(k^9 - k^{13})w_6 + \frac{1}{25}(k^9 - 2k^{13} + k^{17})v_7. \]

So the matrix of \( \psi^k \) under our new basis \( \{z_1, x_2, w_3, x_4, v_5, w_6, v_7\} \) has
\[ [0, 0, 0, k^9, 0, \frac{2}{5}(k^9 - k^{13}), \frac{1}{25}(k^9 - 2k^{13} + k^{17})]^T \]
as the fourth column. We wrote a computer program to calculate the rest of the columns of \( \psi^k \) by repeatedly replacing vectors to the final set of vectors. Here is the matrix of \( \psi^k \): \((2.10)\)

\[
\begin{pmatrix}
\frac{k}{5} & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
-\frac{2}{5}(k - k^5) & k^5 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & k^7 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
-\frac{k+2k^5-3k^9}{m} & -k^5 + k^9 & 0 & k^9 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & \frac{k^7-k^{11}}{5} & 0 & k^{11} & 0 & 0 \\
\frac{2k(k^4-5k^8+k^{12})}{25} & \frac{k^5+2k^8-3k^{13}}{5} & 0 & \frac{2k^5-k^{13}}{5} & 0 & k^{13} & 0 \\
\frac{k^2(7+k^4-5k^8-5k^{12})}{m} & \frac{k^2(1-k^8+k^8)}{25} & 0 & \frac{k^{13}-k^{17}}{5} & 0 & k^{17} & 0 \end{pmatrix},
\]

where \( m = \frac{25k+14k^5+3k^9+2k^{13}-44k^{17}}{125} \).

Note that in proving [7], 3.10; Davis performed a similar algorithm for all primes to get a basis for integral \( PK^1(E_7) \). Because the formula for \( \psi^k \) in [7], 3.10; is so complicated, we prefer the basis for just \( PK^1(E_7)/\psi^p \).

After obtaining the Adams operations in \( PK^1(X) \), we can determine the whole group structure of \( K^1(\Phi X) \). We use \( k = p \) in the matrix. Since \( K^1(\Phi X) \) is a direct sum of cyclic \( p \)-groups, i.e, \( PK^1(X)/\psi^p = \mathbb{Z}/p^a \oplus \cdots \oplus \mathbb{Z}/p^r \), we want to know what the orders \( p^a, \ldots, p^r \) of the summands are. The largest \( p^r \) is the order of the identity map, and gives us the \( p \)-exponent of \( \Phi X \). The procedure which was used to calculate the \( p \)-exponent of \( B(2n+1, 2n+1+tq) \) can be expressed in terms of matrices in the following way.

\[ \begin{bmatrix} p^n & up^{n-1} \\ 0 & p^{n+(p-1)} \end{bmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{u}p^n & p^{n-1} \\ 0 & p^{n+(p-1)} \end{bmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{u}p^n & p^{n-1} \\ \frac{1}{u}p^{n+(p-1)+1} & 0 \end{bmatrix}. \]

We pivot on the entry with smallest \( p \)-exponent. Eliminating the row and column where \( p^{n-1} \) stands, it splits off a \( \mathbb{Z}/p^{n-1} \) summand generated by \( \frac{1}{u}px + y \). What is left is a \( \mathbb{Z}/p^{n+(p-1)+1} \) generated by \( x \).

For a larger matrix, it is hard to do these by hand. We wrote a computer program to do the following algorithm: Go through the matrix and find the entry with smallest \( p \)-exponent. If there are several, choose the first. Pivot on it, record the exponent. Remove the row and column. Then repeat.
Applying the algorithm to the above matrix with \( p = 5 \), we obtain the exponents, 3, 6, 8, 12, 14, 20, which indicate that when localized at \( p = 5 \),

\[
PK^1(E_7)/\psi^5 = \mathbb{Z}/5^3 \oplus \mathbb{Z}/5^6 \oplus \mathbb{Z}/5^8 \oplus \mathbb{Z}/5^{12} \oplus \mathbb{Z}/5^{14} \oplus \mathbb{Z}/5^{20}.
\]

Therefore \( \exp_5(\Phi E_7) = 20 \).

For the spectrum \((\Phi E_7, 7)\), we do the similar algorithm to (2.8) to get rid of the \( 7^4 \) factor in (2.9) by the following steps. Replace \( v_1 \) and \( v_2 \) by \( w_1 := (v_1 + 5v_3 - v_6)/7 \) and \( w_2 := (v_2 + v_5 - v_7)/7 \), then replace \( v_5 \) by \( x_5 := (3v_5 - v_7)/7 \), and finally replace \( w_2 \) by \( z_2 := (w_2 + 3x_5 - v_7)/7 \). Now the matrix \( M_4 = [w_1, z_2, v_3, v_4, x_5, v_6, v_7] \) span \( PK^1(E_7)(7) \) and form a basis. With this basis, we obtain \( \psi^k \) and then run the computer program to get the exponents of the summands to be 3, 7, 9, 11, 14, 19.

For \((E_8, 3)\), \((E_8, 5)\), and \((E_8, 7)\), the matrix of eigenvectors is [7], 3.2. We use Maple to repeatedly replace vectors \( v \) by \( (av_i + bv_j)/p \), where \( (av_i + bv_j) \) is a linear combination of vectors of [7], 3.2; and \( p = 3, 5, 7 \) respectively to get rid of the \( 3^{32}, 5^{10}, 7^9 \) factors in the determinant of [7], 3.2. After we get nice bases to obtain \( \psi^k \) in each of these three cases we obtain the exponents of summands. The results for all cases appear in the table of Theorem (1.1). The procedure and all information regarding the Adams operations \( \psi^k \) for each case can be found in the Appendix of [10] or at http://science.ehc.edu/~xli/AdamsOperations.pdf.

3. Cell structure of \( \Phi X \): torsion-free cases

We begin by proving that \( \Phi X \), the \( v_1 \)-periodic spectrum of an exceptional Lie group \( X \), can be built up by fibrations from \( \Phi S^{2i+1} \).

The \( p \)-local exceptional Lie groups that are torsion-free, listed in [2], (1.1); can be built up by fibrations from odd dimensional spheres. Such spaces are called spherically resolved [5]. For instance, the space \((F_4, 5)\) is built up from spheres \( S^3, S^{11}, S^{15} \), and \( S^{23} \) by fibrations. Since \( \Phi \) preserves homotopy fibrations, the \( v_1 \)-periodic spectrum of these exceptional Lie groups can be built up by fibrations from \( \Phi S^{2i+1} \).

**Definition (3.1)** ([3], 11.2). An object of \( \mathbb{A} \) is algebraically spherically resolved (ASR) if there exist short exact sequences in \( \mathbb{A} \),

\[
0 \rightarrow QK^1(S^{2n+1}) \rightarrow M_i \rightarrow M_{i-1} \rightarrow 0
\]

for \( 0 \leq i \leq k \), with \( M_{-1} = 0 \) and \( M_k = M \).

The following result of Bendersky and Thompson is very useful.

**Lemma (3.3)** ([5], 2.1). Let

\[
0 \rightarrow M_1 \rightarrow M_2 \rightarrow M_3 \rightarrow 0
\]

be a short exact sequence of stable \( p \)-adic Adams modules. Then

\[
\mathcal{M}(M_3, 1) \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(M_2, 1) \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(M_1, 1)
\]

is a fiber sequence of spectra.

Using Lemma (3.3), we prove
THEOREM (3.4). If $X$ is a compact simple Lie group and $p$ is an odd prime, then $\Phi X$ is spherically resolved in the sense that it is built from various $\Phi S^{2n+1}$ by fibrations.

Proof. For a compact simple Lie group $X$, the matrix of Adams operations on $QK^1(X)$ can be brought to triangular form as in the above example. This implies that it is ASR; i.e., there are short exact sequences of Adams modules

$$0 \rightarrow S_i \rightarrow M_i \rightarrow M_{i-1} \rightarrow 0$$

with $S_i = QK^1(S^{2n+1})$ and $M_k = QK^1(X)$. Modding out by $\psi^p$,

$$0 \rightarrow S_i/\psi^p \rightarrow M_i/\psi^p \rightarrow M_{i-1}/\psi^p \rightarrow 0$$

is a short exact sequence of stable Adams module by the Snake Lemma since $\psi^p$ acts injectively on $M_i$. This follows from (3.2) and the injectivity of the action of $\psi^p$ on $QK^1(S^{2n+1})$. Then by Lemma (3.3),

$$(3.5) \quad \mathcal{M}(M_{i-1}/\psi^p, 1) \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(M_i/\psi^p, 1) \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(S_i/\psi^p, 1)$$

is a fiber sequence of spectra. Here $\mathcal{M}(M, 1)$ refers to the spectrum defined in (2.3). Since $\mathcal{M}(S_i/\psi^p, 1) = \Phi S^{2n+1}$, we obtain the desired conclusion. □

We illustrate our method of detecting attaching maps for torsion-free cases by analyzing the cell structure in $(\Phi E_7, 7)$. The matrix of the Adams operation $\psi^7$ in $K^*(\Phi E_7, 7)$, computed by Davis during his work on [7], is given by

$$(3.6) \quad \begin{pmatrix}
7 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 7^5 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
-5(7^-7) & 0 & 7^7 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 7^9 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & -\frac{10}{21}(7^5 - 7^{11}) & 0 & 0 & 7^{11} & 0 & 0 \\
\frac{7^-7^{13}}{7} & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 7^{13} & 0 \\
0 & 7^{(23+10\cdot7^6-33\cdot7^{12})} & 0 & 0 & 0 & 7^{11-7^{17}} & 7 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 7^{11-7^{17}} & 7
\end{pmatrix}$$

This matrix is analogous to (2.10) with $k = 7$, except that some more change of basis has been performed to obtain a better splitting.

Let $M_i$ be the upper $i \times i$ submatrix of (3.6). As in the proof of Theorem (3.4), there are fibrations of spectra

$$(3.7) \quad \mathcal{M}(M_2/\psi^p, 1) \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(M_3/\psi^p, 1) \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(S_3/\psi^p, 1).$$

Here $\mathcal{M}(S_3/\psi^p, 1) = \Phi S^{15}$ by [6], 3.4 and Theorem (2.3). By Proposition (3.8), $\mathcal{M}(M_2/\psi^p, 1) = \Phi S^3 \vee \Phi S^{11}$.

Let $X(3, 11, 15)$ denote the spectrum $\mathcal{M}(M_3/\psi^p, 1)$. In general, the notation $X(\ldots, \ldots, \ldots)$ just refers to a spectrum built from $\Phi S^{2n+1}$ of the indicated dimensions by fibrations. Then (3.7) becomes

$$\Phi S^3 \vee \Phi S^{11} \rightarrow X(3, 11, 15) \rightarrow \Phi S^{15}.$$ 

In the category of spectra, fibrations and cofibrations are the same thing. Therefore we have a cofiber sequence

$$\Sigma^{-1} \Phi S^{15} \rightarrow \Phi S^3 \vee \Phi S^{11} \rightarrow X(3, 11, 15) \rightarrow \Phi S^{15} \rightarrow \Sigma (\Phi S^3 \vee \Phi S^{11})$$
The spectrum $X(3, 11, 15)$ is the cofiber of the map $\alpha$. By Theorem (2.4), the map $\alpha$ is classified by

$$\Ext^1_A(PK^1(S^3)/\psi^p \oplus PK^1(S^{11})/\psi^p, PK^1(S^{15}))$$

$$= \Ext^1_A(PK^1(S^3)/\psi^p) \oplus \Ext^1_A(PK^1(S^{11})/\psi^p)$$

$$= v_1^{-1}\pi_{14}(S^3) \oplus v_1^{-1}\pi_{14}(S^{11})$$

$$= \mathbb{Z}/7$$ generated by $\alpha_1$

Our concern is which element of this group does our attaching map $\alpha$ equal? Does $\alpha = 0$ or $\alpha = \alpha_1$? We answer this question and generalize the above analysis in the following proposition.

Here and later, we will denote the linear transformation $\psi^k$ by its matrix with respect to a certain basis.

**Proposition (3.8).** For a fibration $\Phi S^{2n+1} \to E \to \Phi S^{2n+2p-1}$, either $E = \Phi S^{2n+1} \vee \Phi S^{2n+2p-1}$, in which case

$$\psi^k = \begin{bmatrix} k^n & 0 \\ 0 & k^{n+p-1} \end{bmatrix},$$

or $E = \Phi B(2n+1, 2n+2p-1)$ with $\alpha_1$ attaching map, in which case

$$\psi^k = \begin{bmatrix} u \frac{p}{k} k^n(k^n - 1) & 0 \\ u' p^{n-1} & p^{n+p-1} \end{bmatrix}$$

where $u$ is a unit in $\mathbb{Z}/(p)$.

**Proof.** By an argument similar to that used just above, there is a cofiber sequence

$$\Sigma^{-1}\Phi S^{2n+2p-1} \to \Phi S^{2n+1} \to E \to \Phi S^{2n+2p-1}.$$  

So $E$ is the cofiber of a map $f$. Possible maps $f$ are classified by (2.5) with $\Sigma^2 E = \Phi S^{2n+2p-1}$. Explicitly, they are classified by

$$\Ext^1_A(PK^1(S^{2n+1})/\im \psi^p, PK^1(S^{2n+2p-1})) = \Ext^1_A(PK^1(S^{2n+1})/\im \psi^p)$$

$$= v_1^{-1}\pi_{2n+2p-2}(S^{2n+1})$$

$$= \mathbb{Z}/p$$ generated by $\alpha_1$

There are two possibilities: either $f = 0$ or $f = \alpha_1$. If $f = 0$, then $E$ is a product of $\Phi S^{2n+1}$ and $\Phi S^{2n+2p-1}$ and the Adams operations in $K^*(E)$ split, i.e. $\psi^k = \begin{bmatrix} k^n & 0 \\ 0 & k^{n+p-1} \end{bmatrix}$. If $f = \alpha_1$, then $E = \Phi B(2n+1, 2n+2p-1)$ and the Adams operations in $K^*(-)$ are as in (3.9) by the same argument as in the proof of Proposition (2.7). 

In the case when $k = p$ with which we deal, (3.9) becomes

$$\psi^p = \begin{bmatrix} p^n & 0 \\ u' p^{n-1} & p^{n+p-1} \end{bmatrix}$$

where $u' = u(p^{n-1} - 1)$.

Whereas in ordinary homotopy theory, a cell complex such as $S^3 \cup e^7$ is sometimes denoted by $\begin{array}{c} 3 \rightarrow 7 \end{array}$, here we are dealing with spectrum forms
such as $\Phi S^3 \cup C (\Sigma^{-1} \Phi S^7)$ and will denote this by $(\Phi S^3 \cup C (\Sigma^{-1} \Phi S^7))$ and will denote this by $3 \rightarrow 7$. If $C(\Sigma^{-1} \Phi S^7)$ is attached trivially, this becomes $\Phi S^3 \vee \Sigma \Sigma^{-1} \Phi S^7$ which is just $\Phi S^3 \vee \Phi S^7$. For example, the spectrum $\Phi E_{6/7}$ decomposes as

$$\Phi S^3 \cup_{\alpha_1} C (\Sigma^{-1} \Phi S^{15}) \vee (\Phi S^{11} \cup_{\alpha_1} C (\Sigma^{-1} \Phi S^{23})) \vee \Phi S^9 \vee \Phi S^{17}$$

will be denoted as

$$(3.10) \quad 3 \rightarrow 15 \quad 11 \rightarrow 23 \quad 9 \quad 17$$

By the property stated in Proposition (3.8), the number $\frac{5}{2}(7 - 7^7)$ in row 3, column 1 in (3.6) indicates that the cells $3$ and $15$ are attached by $\alpha_1$. The cell $11$ does not attach to the $3$ cell because the Adams operation splits. So the spectrum $X(3, 11, 15)$ is built as

$$(3.11) \quad 3 \rightarrow 15 \quad 11$$

The cell $19$ does not attach to any cell since the Adams operation splits on the top generator in $M_4$.

By a similar analysis, the cell $23$ is attached to the cell $11$ by $\alpha_1$ because the number in row 5, column 2 is $-\frac{10}{27}(7^5 - 7^{11})$. And because of the zeros in row 5, column 1 and in row 5, column 3, the cell $23$ is not attached to either $3$ or $15$. The cell structure for $\Phi E_{7,5}$ we may see so far is as below,

$$(3.12) \quad 3 \rightarrow 15 \quad 11 \rightarrow 23 \quad 19$$

The attaching map $\beta$ for the $27$ cell is an element of

$$\operatorname{Ext}^1_A (M_5/\operatorname{im} \psi p, K_1 \Phi(S^{27})),$$

where $M(M_5/\operatorname{im} \psi p, 1) = X(3, 15, 11, 23, 19)$.

$$\begin{align*}
\operatorname{Ext}^1_A (M_5/\operatorname{im} \psi p, PK^1(S^{27})) \\
= \operatorname{Ext}^{1,27}_A (PK^1(B(3, 15))/\psi p) \oplus \operatorname{Ext}^{1,27}_A (PK^1(B(11, 23))/\psi p) \\
= v^{-1}_1 p_{26}^2 (B(3, 15)) \oplus v^{-1}_1 p_{26} (B(11, 23)) \oplus v^{-1}_1 p_{26} (S^{19}) \\
= \mathbb{Z}/7 \oplus 0 \oplus 0, \text{ with } \mathbb{Z}/7 \text{ generated by } \alpha_2
\end{align*}$$

The calculation of these $v_1$-periodic homotopy groups are according to [5], 1.2, 1.3.

Again we are concerned with which element of the group $\mathbb{Z}/7$ does our attaching map $\beta$ equal? It is detected by $\psi^k$ in the following proposition, which is proved similarly to Proposition (3.8).

**Proposition (3.11).** For a fibration $\Phi S^{2n+1} \rightarrow E \rightarrow \Phi S^{2n+1+4(p-1)}$, either $E = \Phi S^{2n+1} \vee \Phi S^{2n+1+2q}$ where

$$\psi^k = \begin{bmatrix} k^n & 0 \\ 0 & k^{n+2q} \end{bmatrix}$$
or $E = \Phi B(2n + 1, 2n + 1 + 2q)$ with $\alpha_2$ the attaching map. In this case

$$\psi^k = \begin{bmatrix} u & k^n \left( k^{2p-1} - 1 \right) & 0 \\ 0 & k^{2q} + 2q \end{bmatrix}$$

where $u$ is a unit in $\mathbb{Z}/(7)$.

When $k = p$, (3.12) becomes

$$\psi^p = \begin{bmatrix} p^n & 0 \\ 0 & p^{n+2q} \end{bmatrix}$$

where $u' = u(p^{2q} - 1)$ is a unit.

By this proposition, the number $\frac{1}{7}(7 - 7^{13})$ in row 6, column 1 tells that the cell $\mathbb{Q}$ is attached to $\mathbb{Z}$ by $\alpha_2$. So far, $\Phi E_{7(p)}$ has been built up as

$$\begin{array}{cccc}
3 & 15 & 27 & 11 \\
\alpha_2 & & & \\
19 & 23 & 35 & \\
\end{array}$$

The attaching map for the $\mathbb{Q}$-cell is an element of

$$\text{Ext}^1_A (M_6/\psi^p, K^1(\Phi S^{35}))$$

where $M_6 = X(3, 15, 27, 11, 23, 19)$. We calculate this group in the following.

$$\text{Ext}^1_A (M_6/\psi^p, K^1(\Phi S^{35})) = \text{Ext}^{1,35} (PK^1(B(3, 15, 27))/\psi^p) \oplus \text{Ext}^{1,35} (PK^1(B(11, 23))/\psi^p)$$

$$\oplus \text{Ext}^{1,35} (PK^1(S^{19})/\psi^p)$$

$$= v_1^{-1}\pi_{34} (B(3, 15, 27)) \oplus v_1^{-1}\pi_{34} (B(11, 23)) \oplus v_1^{-1}\pi_{34} (S^{19})$$

$$= 0 \oplus \mathbb{Z}/p^2 \oplus 0$$

$$= \mathbb{Z}/p^2$$

The calculation of the $v_1$-periodic homotopy groups are according to [5], 1.2, 1.3, and 1.4.

Since the number in the last row and 5th column in (3.6) is $\frac{1}{7}(7^{11} - 7^{17})$, the attaching map for $\mathbb{Q}$-cell is an $\alpha_1$ following Proposition (3.8).

Therefore, the cell structure for the spectrum $\Phi E_{7(p)}$ is as below:

$$\begin{array}{cccc}
3 & 15 & 27 & 11 \\
\alpha_2 & & & \\
19 & 23 & 35 & \\
\end{array}$$

By similar analysis, we obtain cell structure for all the other ($\Phi X, p$) when $X$ is a torsion-free exceptional Lie group. Our result is in Theorem (1.2).

### 4. Cell Structure of $\Phi(X)$: torsion cases

In this section, we analyze the attaching maps between cells in $\Phi X$ for $X$ a torsion exceptional Lie group using a change-of-basis method. The correspondence between certain coefficients and the attaching map between associated cells is given in the next two propositions.
Proposition (4.1). Let $f : S^{2n+1+tq} \to S^{2n+1}$ be any map and $t \neq 0$ (p). The matrix of Adams operations in $PK^1 (S^{2n+1} \cup_f e^{2n+1+tq})$ is of the form
\[
\psi^k = \begin{bmatrix}
k^n & 0 \\
a(k^n - k^{n+t(p-1)}) & k^{n+t(p-1)}
\end{bmatrix}
\]
for any integer $k$, where $a \in \mathbb{Q}$ is
1. either a number in $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$
2. or $\frac{1}{p} \cdot u$ with $u \in \mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$ a unit.

In the first case, we can change the basis to get $\psi^k = \begin{bmatrix} k^n & 0 \\ 0 & k^{n+t(p-1)} \end{bmatrix}$ and the attaching map $f$ is then trivial. In the second case, the attaching map is $\alpha$, and we cannot get a diagonal matrix.

Proof. Let $n$ and $p$ be fixed. Suppose that $\psi^k = \begin{bmatrix} k^n & 0 \\ c_k & k^{n+t(p-1)} \end{bmatrix}$ for any $k$.

From $\psi^k \psi^l = \psi^{k+l}$ it follows
\[
c_l \left( k^n - k^{n+t(p-1)} \right) = c_k \left( t^n - t^{n+t(p-1)} \right), \text{ for all } k, l.
\]

Thus the number $\frac{c_l}{k^n - k^{n+t(p-1)}}$ is independent of $k$; we call it $a$. Then $c_k = a \left( k^n - k^{n+t(p-1)} \right) = -a \cdot k^n \left( k^{t(p-1)} - 1 \right)$ for any $k$. We choose $k$ as a generator of $(\mathbb{Z}/p^2)^\times$, which is a cyclic group of order $p(p-1)$. Then $k^{p-1} \not\equiv 1 \pmod{p^2}$ and moreover $k^{t(p-1)} \not\equiv 1 \pmod{p^2}$ for any $t \neq 0$ (p). This says that $k^{t(p-1)} - 1$ is not a multiple of $p^2$. However, $k^{t(p-1)} - 1$ is a multiple of $p$ by Fermat’s Little Theorem.

Since $\psi^k$ is the Adams operation in $K_{(p)}(-)$, $c_k = -a \cdot k^n \left( k^{t(p-1)} - 1 \right)$ is in $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$. To ensure this, the number $a$ has to be either in $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$ or equal to $\frac{1}{p} \cdot u$, that is, $a$ has at most one factor of $p$ in its denominator. \qed

A quick application of this proposition is to see the cell structure for $\Phi F_{4(3)}$. Davis [7], 3.8; gives the Adams operations $\psi^k$ on $PK^1 (\Phi F_{4(3)})$, as
\[
\begin{bmatrix}
k & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
-\frac{1}{120}(k - k^5) & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
-k^7 + \frac{k^7}{120} + \frac{k^7}{126} - \frac{1}{147840} \left( k^{5} - k^{7} \right) & k^7 & 0 & 0 \\
-4620 + \frac{k^7}{126} + \frac{k^7}{1240} - \frac{1}{147840} \left( k^{5} - k^{7} \right) & 872 - k^7 - \frac{k^7}{126} - \frac{1}{147840} \left( k^{5} - k^{7} \right) & 0 & 0
\end{bmatrix}
\]

With twice change-of-basis, (4.4) becomes
\[
\begin{bmatrix}
k & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & k^5 & 0 & 0 \\
k^7 - \frac{k^7}{12} & k^7 & 0 & 0 \\
\frac{k - k^11}{147840} & 0 & 0 & \frac{k^11}{12}
\end{bmatrix}
\]

The zeros tell that the spectrum $\Phi F_{4(3)}$ splits into a wedge of two parts, which are built from the cells (3) and (23) and the cells (11) and (15), respectively. By Proposition (4.1), the spectrum $\Phi F_{4(3)}$ is built up as
\[
\begin{array}{c}
\alpha_5 \\
\xrightarrow{3} & \xrightarrow{23} & \xrightarrow{11} & \xrightarrow{15}
\end{array}
\]
Here we also use the fact that $\mathcal{M}(M_1 \oplus M_2, 1) \approx \mathcal{M}(M_1, 1) \vee \mathcal{M}(M_2, 1)$.

Proposition (4.1) gives the information of how the coefficient in the Adams operations relates to the attaching map between cells $(2n + 1)$ and $(2n + 1 + tq)$ when $t$ is not a multiple of $p$. In the case when $t$ is a multiple of $p$, the result is given by the following proposition, which is proved similarly to Proposition (4.1). We let $t = jp$ for convenience, where $j$ is not a multiple of $p$. We use the standard notation [13], 1.3.11; that $\alpha_t$ is the element of order $p$ in the $(tq - 1)$-stem.

**Proposition (4.6).** Let $f : S^{2n + jq} \to S^{2n + 1}$ be any map, with $j \neq 0(p)$.

1. Let $n > 1$. Then the homotopy group $\pi_{2n + jq}(\Phi S^{2n + 1})$ is $\mathbb{Z}/p^2$, and the matrix of Adams operations in $PK^1(S^{2n + 1} \cup_f e^{2n + 1 + jqp})$ is of the form

$$\psi^k = \begin{bmatrix}
\lambda (k^n - k^{n + jq(p - 1)}) & 0 \\
k^n - k^{n + jq(p - 1)} & 0
\end{bmatrix}.$$  

The number $\lambda$ has the form $\frac{u}{p^e}$, where $u$ is a unit in $\mathbb{Z}/(p)$ and $e = 0, 1, 2$. The attaching map is of one of the three cases

i. If $\lambda = \frac{u}{p}$, the attaching map $f$ is a generator of $\mathbb{Z}/p^e$ called $\frac{1}{p} \alpha_t$.

ii. If $\lambda = \frac{u}{p}$, the attaching map $f$ is $p \cdot \text{gen}$, called $\alpha_t$ (since it is the element of order $p$).

iii. If $\lambda \in \mathbb{Z}(p)$, the attaching map is trivial.

2. If $n = 1$, the homotopy group is $\mathbb{Z}/p$. The coefficient $\lambda$ can only be of type (ii) or (iii) and so the attaching map is the generator or trivial as in cases (ii) or (iii) above.

According to [7], 6.1; the matrix of Adams operations in $PK^1(E_8, \mathbb{Z}(3))$ on a certain basis is given by (4.8) below.

$$\begin{bmatrix}
3 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
3\cdot3^{7} - 3^{3} & 3^{7} & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
9(3^{11} - 3^{7}) & 3^{11} & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
3 & n & 3^{11} - 3^{13} & 3^{13} & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
3 & 3^{13} - 3^{17} & 3^{17} & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
3 & 3^{19} - 3^{17} & 3^{19} & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
3 & 3^{31} - 3^{29} & 3^{23} & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
3 & 3^{31} - 3^{29} & 3^{23} & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0
\end{bmatrix}.$$  

Here $m = \frac{6560}{3} \cdot 3 - 2190 \cdot 3^{7} + \frac{10}{3} \cdot 3^{11}$ and $n = -\frac{24}{9} \cdot 3^{7} + 3 \cdot 3^{11} + \frac{7}{9} \cdot 3^{12}$. The #’s are numbers given in [7], 6.1; which are not relevant to our discussion.

The attaching map for the $(15)$-cell lies in $v_{1}^{-1}\pi_{14}(S^{3}) = \mathbb{Z}/p$, which is generated by $\alpha_3$. The first number in the second row, $\frac{-730}{3}(k - k^{7})$, has a coefficient of type (ii) in Proposition (4.6). So $\alpha_3$ is present. The attaching map for the $(23)$-cell is in $v_{1}^{-1}\pi_{22}(B(3, 15)) = \mathbb{Z}/p ([7], 6.4.c).$ By a change of basis

$$\begin{bmatrix}
3 & 0 & 0 \\
\frac{-730}{3}(3 - 3^{7}) & 3^{7} & 0 \\
\frac{6560}{3} \cdot 3 - 2190 \cdot 3^{7} + \frac{10}{3} \cdot 3^{11} & -9(3^{7} - 3^{11}) & 3^{11}
\end{bmatrix}.$$
becomes
\[
\begin{bmatrix}
3 & 0 & 0 \\
\frac{-730}{3}(3 - 3^7) & 3^7 & 0 \\
\frac{-10}{3}(3 - 3^{11}) & 0 & 3^{11}
\end{bmatrix}.
\]

The first number in the third row has a coefficient of type (ii) in Proposition (4.1) so \(\alpha_5\) is the attaching map between the \(23\)-cell and the \(3\)-cell.

In general, the group \(\pi_{2k}(\Phi X)\) is presented by the matrix
\[
\begin{bmatrix}
(\psi_p)^T \\
(\psi_r - r^k)^T
\end{bmatrix}
\]
where \(r\) is a generator of the group of units mod \(p^2\) ([6]).

The attaching map for the \(27\)-cell is in \(\pi_{26}(\Phi B(3, 15, 23))\). This group is presented by the matrix
\[
\begin{bmatrix}
3 & \frac{-730}{3}(3 - 3^7) & \frac{6560}{3} \cdot 3 - 2190 \cdot 3^7 + \frac{10}{3} \cdot 3^{11} \\
0 & 3^7 & -9(3^7 - 3^{11}) \\
0 & 0 & 3^{11} \\
2 - 2^{13} & \frac{-730}{3}(2 - 2^7) & \frac{6560}{3} \cdot 2 - 2190 \cdot 2^7 + \frac{10}{3} \cdot 2^{11} \\
0 & \frac{2^{13} - 2}{2^7} & -9(2^7 - 2^{11}) \\
0 & 0 & 2^{11} - 2^{13}
\end{bmatrix}
\]

Computer calculation of an algorithm described in Section 2 shows that the group is a cyclic group of \(\mathbb{Z}/3^3\). The number in position (4, 3) of matrix (4.8) tells that \(27\) is attached to \(23\) by \(\alpha_1\) by Proposition (4.1). So far, the cell structure for the first four cells is as below.

The cell \(23\) is not attached to \(15\) because the off-diagonal number below \(3^7\) in (4.8) is of type (i) in Lemma (4.1), which can be removed after a change of basis. Because the \(23\) and \(15\) are not attached to each other, it can happen that the cell \(27\) is attached to both \(23\) and \(15\). If we do a change of basis, the submatrix
\[
\begin{bmatrix}
3^7 & 0 & 0 \\
-9(3^7 - 3^{11}) & 3^{11} & 0 \\
-\frac{34}{9} \cdot 3^7 + 3 \cdot 3^{11} + \frac{7}{5} \cdot 3^{13} & \frac{1}{5}(3^{11} - 3^{13}) & 3^{13}
\end{bmatrix}
\]
becomes
\[
\begin{bmatrix}
3^7 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 3^{11} & 0 \\
-\frac{34}{9}(3^7 - 3^{13}) & \frac{1}{5}(3^{11} - 3^{13}) & 3^{13}
\end{bmatrix}
\]

The coefficient \(-\frac{34}{9}\) is of type (i) in Proposition (4.6), which indicates that \(27\) is attached to \(15\) by \(\frac{1}{3}\alpha_3\). Here we apply Proposition (4.6) since the difference between the exponent 13 and 7 is \(p(p - 1)\).
In the homotopy exact sequence point of view, there is an exact sequence for the inclusions $\Phi S^3 \hookrightarrow \Phi X(3, 15, 23)$,

$$\pi_{26} (\Phi S^3) \xrightarrow{\alpha_1} \pi_{26} (\Phi X(3, 15, 23)) \xrightarrow{\beta} \pi_{26} (\Phi S^{15}) \oplus \pi_{26} (\Phi S^{23})$$

The $g_i$'s below each group denote the generator of that group. We know that $\alpha_1$ is present between $(23)$ and $(27)$ by the number $\frac{1}{3}(3^{11} - 3^{13})$. The attaching map for the $(27)$ cell is a generator of $\mathbb{Z}/27$. The generator of $\mathbb{Z}/27$ must also map to the generator of $\mathbb{Z}/9$ because $3 \cdot g_2$ is not in the $\text{Im}(\beta) = \text{ker}(\partial)$. So an element in $\pi_{26}(\Phi X(3, 15, 23))$ which is attached to $(23)$ by $\alpha_1$ is also attached to $(15)$ by $\frac{1}{3}\alpha_3$.

The cell structure for the first four cells is therefore

$$
\begin{array}{c}
3 \\
\alpha_3 \\
15 \\
\alpha_1 \\
23 \\
\frac{1}{3}\alpha_3 \\
27 \\
\alpha_5 \\
\end{array}
$$

For the remaining attaching maps, we do the same algorithm as we did for $\pi_{26}(\Phi X(3, 15, 23))$. It turns out all the groups, $\pi_{34}(\Phi X(3, 15, 23, 27))$, $\pi_{38}(\Phi X(3, 15, 23, 27, 35))$, $\pi_{46}(\Phi X(3, 15, 23, 27, 35, 49))$, and $\pi_{58}(\Phi X(3, 15, 23, 27, 35, 39, 47))$ are cyclic. By Proposition 4.1, there is an $\alpha_2$ attaching $(35)$ to $(27)$, an $\alpha_1$ attaching $(39)$ and $(35)$, and another $\alpha_2$ attaching $(47)$ to $(39)$. By Proposition (4.6), the cell $(59)$ is attached to $(47)$ by $\frac{1}{3}\alpha_3$.

Therefore the spectrum $(\Phi E_8, 3)$ can be built by fibrations from $\Phi S^n$ according to the scheme in diagram (4.10)

(4.10) $$
\begin{array}{c}
3 \\
\alpha_3 \\
15 \\
\alpha_5 \\
23 \\
\frac{1}{3}\alpha_3 \\
27 \\
\alpha_2 \\
35 \\
\alpha_2 \\
39 \\
\alpha_2 \\
47 \\
\frac{1}{3}\alpha_3 \\
59 \\
\end{array}
$$

In [7], Davis speculated about a cell structure for this case. The reader may notice that there is some difference between [7], Diagram 6.2; and Diagram (4.10). A slight difference, explicitly, is that the attaching map between $(3)$ and $(15)$ is called $3\alpha_3$ and the attaching map between $(47)$ and $(59)$ is $\alpha_3$ in [7], Diagram 6.2. This is because Davis used a different notation at the time. He interpreted $\alpha_k$ to mean the generator of the homotopy group, while we denote it as the element of order $p$. Another difference is that in Diagram (4.10) the $(27)$ cell is also attached to $(15)$ by $\frac{1}{3}\alpha_3$, which was apparently overlooked in [7].

The other cases of Theorem (1.3) are proved similarly.

5. Acknowledgements

Most of the results presented in this paper appear in the author’s Ph.D. Dissertation. The author would like to thank Professor Davis for his guidance and help during preparation of the dissertaton and this work. The author
would also like to thank Emory & Henry College’s Summer Starter Grant for support on this work.

Received July 8, 2008

Final version received May 14, 2009

EMORY & HENRY COLLEGE
EMORY, VA 24327
USA
xli@ehc.edu

REFERENCES

THE VECTOR FIELD PROBLEM FOR PROJECTIVE STIEFEL MANIFOLDS

Dedicado afectuosamente a la memoria de Guillermo Moreno — un entusiasta de las álgebras de Cayley-Dickson y sus aplicaciones en topología

JÚLIUS KORBAŠ AND PETER ZVENGROWSKI

Abstract. Results for the vector field problem on projective Stiefel manifolds $X_{n,r} \cong O(n)/(O(n-r) \times \mathbb{Z}_2)$, $2 \leq r < n$, are derived here; $X_{n,1}$ is $(n-1)$-dimensional real projective space, for which these results are classical. In particular, span($X_{n,r}$) for $r = 2, 3, 4$, for suitable (infinitely many) values of $n$ is calculated. If $r = 2$ and $n$ is odd, then additional difficulties present themselves, and one approach to dealing with this case using the Browder-Dupont invariant is discussed. Furthermore, when $n = 8m - 1$, by using an explicit version of the Hurwitz-Radon multiplications, we improve the lower bound for span($X_{n,2}$) to span($S^n$). Two general results and some conjectures on the span of $X_{n,r}$ are also presented.

1. Introduction

The span of a finite dimensional real vector bundle $\alpha$ over a space $X$, denoted span($\alpha$), is $k$ if $\alpha$ admits $k$, but no more than $k$, everywhere linearly independent cross-sections. If $X$ is paracompact, then span($\alpha$) $\geq k$ means that $\alpha \approx \eta \oplus k\epsilon$ for some vector bundle $\eta$; here and in the sequel $\epsilon$ is the trivial line bundle and $k\epsilon$ denotes the $k$-fold Whitney sum of $\epsilon$ with itself.

For a $q$-dimensional smooth connected manifold $M^q$, one defines its span to be span($M^q$) := span($TM^q$), where $TM$ is the tangent bundle of $M$. The manifold $M^q$ is parallelizable if its span is $q$. The problem of determining the number span($M$) is referred to as the vector field problem on $M$ (further information can be found in [16], [18], [19], [20], [34]).

Besides the span of a manifold one can consider its stable span ([16], [18], [19], [20]):

(1.1) \[ \text{span}^0(M) := \text{span}(TM \oplus \epsilon) - 1. \]

We remark that the stable span of a given smooth closed manifold $M$ is interesting even if one is not able to find its span, in the context of fold maps (a smooth map $f$: $M^q \to N^p$ with $q \geq p$ is a fold map if all of its singular points are of fold type; a singular point $x \in M$ is of fold type if for some local coordinates around $x$ and $f(x)$ one can write $f$ as the assignment $(x_1, \ldots, x_q) \mapsto (x_1, \ldots, x_{p-1}, \pm x_{p+1}^2 \pm \cdots \pm x_q^2)$; in particular if $N^p = \mathbb{R}$, then a fold map is a Morse function on $M$). By Y. Ando (cf. [30]), if dim($M$) = $q$ and span$^0(M) \geq p - 1$ for some $p$ such that $q \geq p \geq 2$, then there exists a fold map

2000 Mathematics Subject Classification: Primary 57R25; Secondary 55S40; 57R19; 57R20.

Keywords and phrases: vector field problem; projective Stiefel manifold; span; characteristic class; cohomology operation.
$M \to \mathbb{R}^p$. In addition to this, as proved by O. Saeki ([29]), if $q - p$ is even and there exists a fold map $M \to \mathbb{R}^p$, then $\text{span}^0(M) \geq p - 1$.

Stably parallelizable manifolds (known also as $\pi$-manifolds) are those for which the stable span is the same as the dimension; the Bredon-Kosinski theorem ([10]) effectively determines the span of such manifolds. The projective Stiefel manifolds $X_{n,r}$ of orthonormal $r$-frames in $\mathbb{R}^n$ by identifying $(v_1, \ldots, v_r) \in V_{n,r}$ with $(-v_1, \ldots, -v_r)$, form a family of closed, connected, smooth manifolds, among which relatively few are stably parallelizable (see [5]). Note that $X_{n,1} = \mathbb{P}^{n-1}$, $(n - 1)$-dimensional real projective space, for which the span question was solved by Adams [1]. The study of $X_{n,r}$ for $r > 1$ was inaugurated by P. Baum and W. Browder [8] and S. Gitler and D. Handel [11] in the 1960’s, and has been a subject of ongoing interest since then ([4], [5], [6], [7], [31], [32], [35], [36] etc.).

This paper (mentioned as a “later paper” in [31]), in combination with [31], is an attempt to present the current state of knowledge concerning the span question for the projective Stiefel manifolds $X_{n,r}$, $r \geq 2$. This question is related to the same problem for other important spaces. For instance, for the flag manifold $O(n)/((O(1))^r \times O(n - r))$ we have that $\text{span}(X_{n,r}) \geq \text{span}(O(n)/((O(1))^r \times O(n - r)))$. We note that the information available on the span of the above mentioned flag manifold is in general quite weak (see [18]; an exception: for $r = 2$, quite a bit is known; see [3], [12], [15]).

In the sequel, the number $\dim(X_{n,r}) = nr - \binom{r+1}{2}$ will be denoted by $d_{n,r}$; we shall write just $d$ instead of $d_{n,r}$ when $(n, r)$ is clear from the context. For the tangent bundle we have ([22], [38])

\begin{equation}
\tau_{n,r} := TX_{n,r} \cong r\xi_{n,r} \otimes \beta_{n,r} \oplus \binom{r}{2} e,
\end{equation}

and stably

\begin{equation}
\tau_{n,r} \oplus \binom{r+1}{2} e \cong nr\xi_{n,r},
\end{equation}

where $\xi_{n,r}$ (sometimes denoted just by $\xi$) is the line bundle associated to the obvious double covering $V_{n,r} \to X_{n,r}$, and $\beta_{n,r}$ is the “orthogonal complement” bundle characterized by $r\xi_{n,r} \oplus \beta_{n,r} \cong ne$. Note that $\xi_{n,1} = \xi_{n-1}$, the familiar Hopf line bundle over $X_{n,1} = \mathbb{P}^{n-1}$.

Of course, (stable) $\text{span}(X_{n,r})$ can be at least $i$ only if the Stiefel-Whitney classes $w_{d-i+j}(\tau_{n,r}) := w_{d-i+j}(X_{n,r})$, $j \geq 1$, vanish. The isomorphism (1.3) implies that

\begin{equation}
w(X_{n,r}) = (1 + w_1(\xi_{n,r}))^{nr}.
\end{equation}

For deciding whether or not $w_i(X_{n,r})$ vanishes, it is also necessary to know the $\mathbb{Z}_2$-cohomology ring of $X_{n,r}$. By [11], 1.6;

\begin{equation}
H^*(X_{n,r}; \mathbb{Z}_2) = \mathbb{Z}_2[y]/(y^N) \otimes V(y_{n-r}, \ldots, \hat{y}_{N-1}, \ldots, y_{n-1}),
\end{equation}

where $y = w_1(\xi_{n,r})$, $N = \min\{j; j \geq n - r + 1, \binom{r}{j} \equiv 1 \pmod{2}\}$, and

$V(y_{n-r}, \ldots, \hat{y}_{N-1}, \ldots, y_{n-1})$
is the $\mathbb{Z}_2$-vector space having the monomials $\prod_{i=n-r}^{n-1} y_i^t$ with $i \neq N - 1$ and $t_i \in \{0, 1\}$ as $\mathbb{Z}_2$-basis. For later use, we note that (1.5) immediately implies the formula for the mod 2 Poincaré polynomial:

$$P_t(X_{n,r}; \mathbb{Z}_2) = \frac{(1 + t + \cdots + t^{N-1})(1 + t^{n-r}) \cdots (1 + t^{n-1})}{1 + t^{N-1}}.$$ 

Additionally, (1.5) determines all cup products in $H^*(X_{n,r}; \mathbb{Z}_2)$ except for $y_i^2$, which can be found using [4] since $y_i^2 = sq^i(y_i)$. Correcting misprints of [4], we reproduce the formulae for Steenrod squares here (these formulae were also published in [39]). Let $t := \nu_2(N)$ denote the exponent of the largest power of 2 dividing $N$. Then one has

$$sq^i(y_{q-1}) = \sum_{k=0}^i A_k y_k y_{q+i-1-k} + \sum_{0 \leq k < j \leq i} B_{k,j} y_0^{q+k+i-N-j} y_{N+j-k-1} + \epsilon y^{q+i-1},$$

where

$$\epsilon = \begin{cases} \left( \frac{n}{q+2^{r-1}-N} \right)^{(q+2^{r-1}-N)_{i-1}} & \text{if } t \geq 3, \\ 0 & \text{if } t < 3, \end{cases}$$

$$A_k = A(q,i,k) = \left( \frac{n}{q-1-k} \right) \left( \frac{n}{q-1-i} \right) \frac{n}{k},$$

$$B_{k,j} = B(q,i,k,j) = \left( \frac{n}{q} \right) \left( \frac{N-1-k}{N-1-j} \right) \left( \frac{q-N}{i-j} \right) \frac{n}{j}.$$ 

Apart from $X_{12,8}$, the parallelizability question for $X_{n,r}$, $r \geq 2$, is settled in [5] and in [6]. In addition to this, a complete solution to the vector field problem on $X_{n,r}$ is known for some families of $(n, r)$. More precisely, for $X_{n,1} = P^{n-1}$, one has, as a consequence of the solution of the vector field problem for spheres [1], that $\text{span}(X_{n,1}) = \text{span}(S^{n-1}) = \rho(n) - 1$, where $\rho(n) = 2^c + 8d$ for $n$ expressed as $(2a + 1)2^{c+4d}$, $a, d \geq 0$, $0 \leq c \leq 3$. One calls $\rho(n)$ the Hurwitz-Radon number of $n$, and this will also be useful later in this work. At one extreme, for $r$ close to $n$, it has long been known ([5]) that $X_{n,n-1}$ and $X_{2m,2m-2}$ (with $m$ arbitrary) are parallelizable. Around 1998, Zvengrowski [39] has determined $\text{span}(X_{2m+1,2m-1})$ and $\text{span}(X_{n,n-3})$; thus $\text{span}(X_{n,n-j})$ is also known for $j \leq 3$. Our aim in this paper is to study the other extreme, $r$ close to 2, and calculate the span of $X_{n,r}$ for some families with $r = 2, 3, 4$, as well as to prove some general results on $\text{span}(X_{n,r})$.

From the formula (1.2), one immediately has that $\text{span}(X_{n,r}) \geq 1$ when $r \geq 2$. In [18] and [19] we derived the strong lower bound

$$\text{span}^0(X_{n,r}) \geq k_{n,r}$$

for $\text{span}^0(X_{n,r})$, where $k_{n,r}$ is defined as follows:

**Definition (1.7).** $k_{n,r} := \text{span}(nr\xi_{n-1}) - \binom{r+1}{2}$.

Note that we always have $k_{n,r} \geq d_{n,r} - n + 1$, since $\text{span}(nr\xi_{n-1}) \geq nr - (n-1)$ by standard stability properties of vector bundles. Since $d_{n,r}$ is in general much larger than $n - 1$, this shows that the resulting inequality $d_{n,r} - n + 1 \leq \text{span}^0(X_{n,r}) \leq d_{n,r}$ already gives relatively sharp estimates for $\text{span}^0(X_{n,r})$, which of course can be improved by applying cohomology theory to reduce the upper bound.
As was shown in [19], $k_{n,r}$ is in fact a lower bound for $\text{span}(X_{n,r})$ as well, except possibly when $n$ is odd and $r = 2$. This seems to be the most intractable case and is studied in some detail in §2. We also prove Theorem 2.3 in §2, which improves the known lower bound for $\text{span}(X_{n-1,2})$ when $n$ is divisible by 8. This involves using an explicit version of the Hurwitz-Radon multiplications, and an Appendix (§5) is added giving an elegant construction of these multiplications based on ideas of Moreno [27] and Lam-Yiu [23], [24].

Then in §3 we prove that if $2 \leq r \leq \rho(n)$, then

$$\text{span}(X_{n,r}) = \text{span}^0(X_{n,r}) = k_{n,r},$$

and we shall calculate $\text{span}(X_{n,r})$ for $r = 2$, 3 or 4, for suitable (infinitely many) values of $n$, using the lower bound $k_{n,r}$ and other results.

In §4 we prove the following useful inequalities:

$$\text{span}(X_{n,r+1}) \geq \text{span}(X_{n,r}),$$

and, for $s \geq 2$, $\text{span}(X_{n,r+s}) \geq \text{span}^0(X_{n,r}) + \left(\frac{s}{2}\right)$.

We close §4 with several conjectures about $\text{span}(X_{n,r})$, for which the results in this paper and its predecessors provide strong evidence.

2. On stable span and span of $X_{n,2}$

The projective Stiefel manifold $X_{n,2}$ has an interesting geometric interpretation, as the tangent sphere bundle to $P^{n-1}$, but this fact will not be used here. Its dimension is of course $2n - 3$.

For $\text{span}^0(X_{n,2})$ we have the lower bound given in (1.6),

$$\text{span}^0(X_{n,2}) \geq k_{n,2} = \text{span}(2n\xi_{n,1}) - 3.$$

In fact, as mentioned in the Introduction, $k_{n,2}$ is known to also be a lower bound for $\text{span}(X_{n,2})$ when $n$ is even. Indeed, the span and stable span of $X_{n,2}$ with $n$ even coincide ([18], [19]), and we shall show, in §3, that $\text{span}(X_{n,2}) = k_{n,2}$ in such cases. Of course, determining $k_{n,r}$ (or in particular $k_{n,2}$) is a special case of the solution of the “generalized vector field problem” (this is the question of what is the span of any multiple of $\xi_{n-1}$ over $P^{n-1}$, for any $n$). The latter is not yet completely known, but the results of Lam [21], Theorems 1.1, 3.1, Remark 3.5; and of Lam and Randall [25], 5.14; [26] give the answer in the majority of cases and imply the following proposition. The fact that the binomial coefficient $\binom{2m}{m}$ for $m \geq 1$ is even is implicitly used in those cases where no binomial coefficient is explicitly given; see also §3 for some further details and (in many cases) strengthened results.

**PROPOSITION (2.1). We have the following lower bounds.**

$n = 8m & m \geq 1 & \binom{2m}{m-1} \text{ odd} \Rightarrow \text{span}(X_{n,2}) \geq k_{n,2} = n + 5.$

$n = 8m & m \geq 2 & \binom{2m}{m-1} \text{ even} \Rightarrow \text{span}(X_{n,2}) \geq k_{n,2} \geq n + 6,$

$\text{span}(X_{16,2}) \geq k_{16,2} = 23.$

$n = 8m + 1 & m \geq 1 \Rightarrow \text{span}^0(X_{n,2}) \geq k_{n,2} \geq n,$

$\text{span}^0(X_{9,2}) \geq k_{9,2} = 13, \text{span}^0(X_{17,2}) \geq k_{17,2} \geq 22.$

$n = 8m + 2 & m \geq 1 \Rightarrow \text{span}(X_{n,2}) \geq k_{n,2} \geq n + 2.$
\[ n = 8m + 3 \& m \geq 1 \Rightarrow \text{span}(X_{n,2}) \geq k_{n,2} \geq n + 1. \]
\[ n = 8m + 4 \& m \geq 0 \& \left(\frac{2^{m+1}}{m}\right) \text{ odd} \Rightarrow \text{span}(X_{n,2}) \geq k_{n,2} = n + 1. \]
\[ n = 8m + 4 \& m \geq 2 \& \left(\frac{2^{m+1}}{m}\right) \text{ even} \Rightarrow \text{span}(X_{n,2}) \geq k_{n,2} \geq n + 2. \]
\[ n = 8m + 5 \& m \geq 0 \& \left(\frac{2^{m+1}}{m}\right) \text{ odd} \Rightarrow \text{span}(X_{n,2}) \geq k_{n,2} = n. \]
\[ n = 8m + 5 \& m \geq 2 \& \left(\frac{2^{m+1}}{m}\right) \text{ even} \Rightarrow \text{span}(0)(X_{n,2}) \geq k_{n,2} \geq n + 1. \]
\[ n = 8m + 6 \& m \geq 0 \& \left(\frac{2^{m+1}}{m}\right) \text{ odd} \Rightarrow \text{span}(X_{n,2}) \geq k_{n,2} = n - 1. \]
\[ n = 8m + 6 \& m \geq 2 \& \left(\frac{2^{m+1}}{m}\right) \text{ even} \Rightarrow \text{span}(X_{n,2}) \geq k_{n,2} \geq n + 3. \]
\[ n = 8m + 7 \& m \geq 0 \& \left(\frac{2^{m+1}}{m}\right) \text{ odd} \Rightarrow \text{span}(0)(X_{n,2}) \geq k_{n,2} = n - 2. \]
\[ n = 8m + 7 \& m \geq 2 \& \left(\frac{2^{m+1}}{m}\right) \text{ even} \Rightarrow \text{span}(0)(X_{n,2}) \geq k_{n,2} \geq n + 2. \]

By a special case of [14], Theorem 1.6; there are one or two isomorphism-classes of \(d_{n,2}\)-plane bundles over \(X_{n,2}\) which are stably isomorphic to the tangent bundle \(\tau_{n,2}\); in other words, the James-Thomas number \(I(X_{n,2})\) is 1 or 2, respectively. Clearly, \(\text{span}(0)(X_{n,2}) = \text{span}(X_{n,2})\) if \(I(X_{n,2}) = 1\). But, as we shall see in Theorem (2.6), the equality \(I(X_{n,2}) = 1\) is a rare phenomenon. In a remark after the proof of Theorem (2.6), we shall outline an idea which perhaps can lead to solving the question of whether or not \(\text{span}(0)(X_{n,2}) = \text{span}(X_{n,2})\) if \(I(X_{n,2}) = 2\) and \(n\) is odd; but we did not succeed in applying this idea up to now. In view of this, for \(n\) odd Proposition (2.1) gives lower bounds for \(\text{span}(0)(X_{n,2})\), but not for \(\text{span}(X_{n,2})\), the following theorem is useful.

**Theorem (2.2).** *For the projective Stiefel manifolds* \(X_{n,2}\) *with* \(n \geq 7\) *odd one has* \(\text{span}(X_{n,2}) \geq 4\). *In addition to this, one has* \(\text{span}(X_{3,2}) = 3\) *and* \(\text{span}(X_{5,2}) = 5\).

**Proof.** Suppose that \(n \geq 7\) is odd. Then \(d_{n,2} = 2n - 3 \equiv 3\) (mod 4); since \(n \geq 7\), we have \(d_{n,2} \geq 11\). It is clear, for instance from the formula (1.4), that each of the manifolds \(X_{n,2}\) is orientable. So by [20, 15.13; in order to prove \(\text{span}(X_{n,2}) \geq 4\), it is enough to verify that now \(w^2_2(X_{n,2})\) does not vanish, while \(w_{d-3}(X_{n,2}) = 0\).

From the formula (1.4) we obtain \(w^2_2(X_{n,2}) = y^4\), and this is not zero (see the description of \(H^*(X_{n,2}; \mathbb{Z})\) in the Introduction), because \(N = n - 1 > 4\). In addition to this, \(w_{d-3}(X_{n,2}) = (\frac{2}{6})y^{2n-6} = 0\), because we obviously have \(2n - 6 > N\). So the theorem is proved for all \(n \geq 7\) odd.

Consider the two remaining spaces. Since any orientable 3-dimensional manifold is parallelizable ([34]), span of \(X_{3,2}\) is 3. Finally, from Proposition (2.1) we have that \(\text{span}(0)(X_{5,2}) \geq 5\). But, since \(d_{5,2} = 7\), the James-Thomas number of this manifold is \(1\) (see [14, Theorem 1.7]), and therefore its stable span and span coincide. So we also have \(\text{span}(X_{5,2}) \geq 5\). On the other hand, \(\text{span}(X_{5,2}) \geq 6\) is impossible; indeed, we have \(w_2(X_{5,2}) = y^2 \neq 0\). As a consequence, \(\text{span}(X_{5,2}) = 5\).

Before proving the next theorem, which improves to \(\text{span}(S^{n-1})\) the lower bound of 4 (given in Theorem (2.2)) for \(\text{span}(X_{n,2})\) whenever \(n \equiv 0\) (mod 8), some notation needs to be set up. For \(r = p(n)\), let \(e_0, e_1, \ldots, e_{r-1}\) be the canonical orthonormal basis in \(\mathbb{R}^n\) and \(e_0, \ldots, e_{n-1}\) be the canonical orthonormal basis in \(\mathbb{R}^n\); \(\mathbb{R}^{n-1}\) will be the subspace spanned by \(e_1, \ldots, e_{n-1}\). For any vector \(c \in \mathbb{R}^n\)
we shall write \(c'\) for its projection into \(\mathbb{R}^{n-1}\). Thus, if \(c = (c_0, \ldots, c_{n-1})\), then 
\[c' = (0, c_1, \ldots, c_{n-1}) = c - c_0 e_0.\]

Now let \(\mathbb{R}^r \otimes \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^n\) be a norm preserving multiplication, denoted \(u \otimes v \mapsto u \cdot v := \phi_u(v)\), where \(\phi_u \in O(n)\) whenever \(\|u\| = 1\). In particular we write \(\phi_i(v) = e_i \cdot v, 0 \leq i \leq r - 1\), and by replacing \(\phi_i\) by \(\phi_i^{-1} \circ \phi_i\) (which has no effect on the norm preserving property), we may suppose without loss of generality that \(\phi_0 = I\). Construction of such norm preserving forms is carried out via [23], [24], [37], and briefly described in the appendix to this paper. As is shown there, it enjoys the following additional properties, of which (ii) is classical and (iii) describes the first coordinate of \(\phi_j(a)\):

\[P(i): \quad e_0 \cdot v = v, \quad \text{i.e.} \quad \phi_0 = I,\]

\[P(ii): \quad \text{for } i, j > 0, i \neq j, \quad \phi_i^2 = -I, \quad \phi_i \phi_j + \phi_j \phi_i = 0,\]

\[P(iii): \quad \text{for } j \geq 1, a = (a_0, \ldots, a_{n-1}) \in \mathbb{R}^n, e_j \cdot a - (e_j \cdot a)' = \pm a_{j(j+1)} e_0,\]

where the map \(J: \{1, \ldots, n-1\} \to \{1, \ldots, n-1\}\) is injective.

Since, for \(i \geq 1\), the orthogonal skew symmetric transformation \(\phi_i\) can be replaced by \(-\phi_i\) with no effect on the norm preserving property, we may assume in \(P(iii)\) that \(e_j \cdot a - (e_j \cdot a)' = -a_{j(j+1)} e_0\), \(j \geq 1\).

**THEOREM (2.3).** One has span\((X_{n-1,2})\) \(\geq\) span\((S^{n-1})\).

**Proof.** For \((a, b) \in V_{n-1,2}\), i.e. \(a, b \in \mathbb{R}^{n-1}\), \(\|a\| = \|b\| = 1\), \(\langle a, b \rangle = 0\), define \(w_j(a, b) = ((e_j \cdot a)', (e_j \cdot b)') \in \mathbb{R}^{n-1} \oplus \mathbb{R}^{n-1}\), \(1 \leq j \leq r - 1\).

First we show \(w_j(a, b)\) is a tangent vector to \(V_{n-1,2}\) at \((a, b)\). We use the explicit description of the tangent bundles to \(V_{n,r}\) and \(X_{n,r}\) given in [5], Lemma 2.2 (also in [38]). Let \(v = (a, b)\) denote a point of the Stiefel manifold \(V_{n-1,2}\), and let \([v] = \{v, -v\}\) be the corresponding point in the projective Stiefel manifold \(X_{n-1,2}\). Then the tangent space \(T_v(X_{n-1,2})\) consists of pairs \([v, w]\), where \(w = (x, y)\) with \(x, y \in \mathbb{R}^{n-1}\) is such that

\[\langle x, x \rangle = \langle y, y \rangle = \langle x, y \rangle + \langle b, x \rangle = 0, [v, w] = [-v, -w].\]

The tangent space \(T_v(V_{n-1,2})\) is similar (without identifications).

Noting that \(\langle x, y' \rangle = \langle x, y \rangle\) whenever \(x \in \mathbb{R}^{n-1}\), \(y \in \mathbb{R}^n\), we then have \(\langle a, (e_j \cdot a)' \rangle = \langle a, e_j \cdot a \rangle = 0\), similarly for \(b\), and finally

\[\langle a, (e_j \cdot b)' \rangle + \langle b, (e_j \cdot a)' \rangle = \langle a, e_j \cdot b \rangle + \langle b, e_j \cdot a \rangle = \langle a, e_j \cdot b \rangle + \langle -e_j \cdot b, a \rangle = 0.\]

Second, since \(w_j(-a, -b) = -w_j(a, b)\), the \(w_j\) induce well defined vector fields on \(X_{n-1,2}\).

Finally, let us show that \(w_1(a, b), \ldots, w_{r-1}(a, b)\) are linearly independent. So suppose \(\sum_{j=1}^{r-1} \lambda_j w_j(a, b) = 0\), with not all \(\lambda_j\) zero. Write \(\lambda = \sum_{j=1}^{r-1} \lambda_j e_j \in \mathbb{R}^{n-1}\).

We also write, for later use, \(\tilde{\lambda} = \sum_{j=1}^{r-1} \lambda_j e_j \in \mathbb{R}^r\). Without loss of generality assume \(\|\lambda\| = 1\), so also \(\|\tilde{\lambda}\| = 1\). By definition \(\sum_{j=1}^{r-1} \lambda_j (e_j \cdot a)' = \sum_{j=1}^{r-1} \lambda_j (e_j \cdot b)' = 0\). Working with \(a\), and using the equation for \(c'\) as well as the property of \(e_j \cdot a\) mentioned above, this gives \(\sum_{j=1}^{r-1} \lambda_j (e_j \cdot a + a_j e_0) = 0\), where we now write \(J = J(j)\) for convenience. Thus

\[\sum_{j=1}^{r-1} \lambda_j e_j \cdot a = -\left(\sum_{j=1}^{r-1} \lambda_j a_j e_0\right).\]
Trivially, $|\langle \lambda, \sum_{j=1}^{r-1} a_j e_j \rangle| = |\sum_{j=1}^{r-1} \lambda_j a_j| = || - \sum_{j=1}^{r-1} (\lambda_j a_j) e_0 ||$. Now, applying successively (2.4) followed by the norm preserving property, this equals $|| \sum_{j=1}^{r-1} (\lambda_j e_j) \cdot a || = || \lambda || \cdot || a || = 1 \cdot 1 = 1$. Since the inner product of two vectors, the first being a unit vector and the second having norm at most 1, can have absolute value 1 if and only if they are parallel and the second has norm 1, we have then that $\lambda = \pm \sum_{j=1}^{r-1} a_j e_j$. Exactly the same applies to $b$, so $\lambda = \pm \sum_{j=1}^{r-1} b_j e_j$. Finally, since $J = J(j)$ is injective by P(iii), this implies that $a, b$ are also parallel, giving the desired contradiction and completing the proof. \hfill \Box

**Corollary (2.5).** We have $\text{span}(X_{7,2}) = 7$.

**Proof.** The lower bound 7 is obtained from the theorem, and Stiefel-Whitney classes easily give the same upper bound. \hfill \Box

Our next theorem shows that the manifolds $X_{n,2}$ mostly have James-Thomas number 2.

**Theorem (2.6).** While the James-Thomas number is 1 for $X_{3,2}$ and $X_{5,2}$, it equals 2 for the remaining projective Stiefel manifolds $X_{n,2}$, except possibly for $n = 2^t + 1, t \geq 3$.

**Proof.** In the proof, we shall suppose $n \neq 2^t + 1$. Let $BO$ be the classifying space of the stable orthogonal group $O$, and let

$$\sigma: H^{i+1}(BO; \mathbb{Z}_2) \rightarrow H^i(\Omega BO; \mathbb{Z}_2)$$

be the suspension homomorphism. In applying [14, Theorem 1.6; we shall replace the loop space $\Omega BO$ by $O$ (see e.g. [2], 2.3.1 (iv)). Then instead of $\sigma(w_{i+1})$, where $w_j$ is the $j$-th universal Stiefel-Whitney class, we shall for convenience write $v_i \in H^i(O; \mathbb{Z}_2)$, $i \geq 1$. Now, by [14], it suffices to show that for any map $\beta: X_{n,2} \rightarrow O$ one has

$$\Delta(\beta) := \beta^*(v_{2n-3}) + \sum_{i=2}^{2n-3} \beta^*(v_{i-1}) w_{2n-2-i}(X_{n,2}) = 0 \in H^{2n-3}(X_{n,2}; \mathbb{Z}_2).$$

We have (see (1.5))

$$H^*(X_{n,2}; \mathbb{Z}_2) = \mathbb{Z}_2[y]/(y^N) \otimes V(y_q),$$

as an algebra, where $N = n - 1, n$ according as $n$ is respectively odd, even, and $q = n - 1, n - 2$ according as $n$ is respectively odd, even (note $q$ is thus always even). Since (1.4) implies

$$w_{2n-2-i}(X_{n,2}) = \binom{2n}{2n-2-i} y^{2n-2-i},$$

we have

$$\Delta(\beta) = \beta^*(v_{2n-3}) + \sum_{i=2}^{2n-3} \beta^*(v_{i-1}) \binom{2n}{2+i} y^{2n-2-i}.$$
To show this is 0 it will certainly suffice, since \( y^{2n-3} = 0 \), to prove that \( \beta^*(v_j) \in \mathbb{Z}_2[y]/(y^N) \), \( j \geq 1 \). Now we recall that by [9], (8.7); one has for the Steenrod squares
\[
Sq^i(v_j) = \binom{j}{i} v_{i+j}
\]
for \( i \leq j \). Hence it is sufficient to show that
\[
\beta^*(v_{2k-1}) \in \mathbb{Z}_2[y]/(y^N), \quad k \geq 1.
\]
This task is trivial if \( 2^k - 1 < q \), so one only has to consider the range for \( k \) where \( 2^k - 1 \geq q \). Then one has
\[
\beta^*(v_{2k-1}) = \lambda y_q y^{2^k-1-q}
\]
for some \( \lambda \in \mathbb{Z}_2 \). Using [4], 2.1 (see the Introduction), one readily checks that \( Sq^1(y_q) = 0 \), and applying \( Sq^1 \) to (2.8), we obtain
\[
\lambda y_q y^{2^k-q} = \beta^*(v_{2k}) \cdot
\]
Observe that the top class in \( H^*(X_{n,2}; \mathbb{Z}_2) \) is \( y_q y^{n-2} \) if \( n \) is odd or \( y_q y^{n-1} \) if \( n \) is even. Hence in all the cases which we need to consider we have \( 2^k - q < N \); therefore \( y_q y^{2^k-q} \neq 0 \). On the other hand,
\[
\beta^*(v_{2k}) \in \mathbb{Z}_2[y]/(y^N),
\]
because
\[
v_{2k} = Sq^{2k-1} \ldots Sq^2 Sq^1(v_1).
\]
Finally, since \( 2^k \geq q + 2 \geq N \), we have \( \beta^*(v_{2k}) = 0 \) and (2.9) implies that \( \lambda = 0 \).

We remark that for \( X_{2t+1,2} \) (\( t \geq 3 \)) the problem of determining James-Thomas numbers remains open. To close this section, we outline (as we promised before the statement of Theorem (2.2)) a possible way of thinking (in the spirit of [18], p. 8-9) about the relation between stable span and span of any odd-dimensional smooth closed manifold \( M \) with \( I(M) = 2 \), in particular for \( M = X_{n,2} \) when \( n \) is odd and \( I(X_{n,2}) = 2 \). In this case, for any \( d_{n,2} \)-plane bundle \( \alpha \) stably isomorphic to \( \tau_{n,2} \) one has (see [33]) a number \( b_B(\alpha) \in \mathbb{Z}_2 \), called the Browder-Dupont invariant. This \( b_B \) distinguishes between those two classes of \( d_{n,2} \)-plane bundles stably isomorphic to \( \tau_{n,2} \), and \( b_B(\tau_{n,2}) \) is precisely the Kervaire mod 2 semi-characteristic
\[
\chi_2(X_{n,2}) = \sum_{i=0}^{n-2} \dim (H^i(X_{n,2}; \mathbb{Z}_2)) \quad (\text{mod } 2).
\]
Observe that for any odd-dimensional \( X_{n,r} \), the Kervaire semi-characteristic is nothing but \( \frac{1}{2} P_1(X_{n,r}; \mathbb{Z}_2) \) mod 2. From the formula for the Poincaré polynomial \( P_1(X_{n,r}; \mathbb{Z}_2) \) it is easy to see that \( P_1 \) is divisible by 4 for \( r \geq 2 \); thus the Kervaire semi-characteristic vanishes in all such cases. Now suppose that we are given some \( X_{n,2} \) with \( n \) odd and \( I(X_{n,2}) = 2 \) about which we know that span\(^0(X_{n,2}) \) is some number \( s \); then there is a vector bundle \( \eta \) such that \( \tau_{n,2} \oplus \varepsilon \approx \eta \oplus (s + 1) \varepsilon \). Since, as we have seen, \( b_B(\tau_{n,2}) = 0 \), it is enough to be able to show that \( b_B(\eta \oplus s \varepsilon) = 0 \) in order to conclude that \( \tau_{n,2} \approx \eta \oplus s \varepsilon \), and span\( (X_{n,2}) = s = \) span\(^0(X_{n,2}) \). One can try to proceed analogously knowing
that \( \text{span}^0(X_{n,2}) \geq k \) for some \( k \) (for instance \( k = k_{n,2} \)), when one wants to show that also \( \text{span}(X_{n,2}) \geq k \).

3. The span of \( X_{n,r} \) for \( r \leq \rho(n) \) and for \( r \leq 4 \)

The following theorem and its corollary allow us to calculate the stable span and also the span of those projective Stiefel manifolds \( X_{n,r} \) satisfying \( r \leq \rho(n) \), at least to within the knowledge of \( k_{n,r} \).

**Theorem (3.1).** If \( r \leq \rho(n) \), then we have \( \text{span}^0(X_{n,r}) = k_{n,r} \).

**Proof.** If \( r \leq \rho(n) \), then (as shown in the Appendix) there exists a \( \mathbb{Z}_2 \)-equivariant (indeed linear) cross section of the fibre bundle \( V_{n,r} \to V_{n,1} = S^{n-1} \). This therefore induces a cross section \( s \) of the fibre bundle \( \pi: X_{n,r} \to X_{n,1} = P^{n-1} \) such that \( s^*(\xi_{n,r}) \approx \xi_{n,1} \). Since also \( \pi^*(\xi_{n,1}) \approx \xi_{n,r} \), it follows that \( \text{span}(m\xi_{n,r}) = \text{span}(m\xi_{n,1}) \) for any \( m \). This yields (see (1.3) and Definition (1.7))

\[
\text{span}^0(X_{n,r}) = \text{span}(nr\xi_{n,r}) - \left(\frac{r + 1}{2}\right) = \text{span}(nr\xi_{n,1}) - \left(\frac{r + 1}{2}\right) = k_{n,r}.
\]

**Corollary (3.2).** If \( 2 \leq r \leq \rho(n) \) then we have \( \text{span}(X_{n,r}) = k_{n,r} \).

**Proof.** The hypotheses imply \( n \) is even. Then, as a special case of [19], Theorem p. 100; \( \text{span}(X_{n,r}) \geq k_{n,r} \). Theorem (3.1) therefore implies now that \( \text{span}(X_{n,r}) \geq \text{span}^0(X_{n,r}) \), and, as a consequence, \( \text{span}(X_{n,r}) = \text{span}^0(X_{n,r}) \). □

We next calculate the span for several infinite families of projective Stiefel manifolds \( X_{n,r} \) with \( 2 \leq r \leq 4 \); we shall use various methods for showing, in each case under question, that the lower and upper bounds coincide. For cases (a)-(d), which are strengthenings of results in Proposition (2.1), the following special binomial coefficients are used. All follow readily from Kummer’s formula

\[
\nu_2\left(\begin{array}{c} s + t \\ t \end{array}\right) = \alpha(s) + \alpha(t) - \alpha(s + t),
\]

where \( \nu_2 \) was defined in §1 and \( \alpha(t) \) is the number of 1’s in the dyadic expansion of \( t \).

\[
\nu_2\left(\begin{array}{c} 2m \\ m \end{array}\right) = \alpha(m)
\]

\[
\nu_2\left(\begin{array}{c} 2m + 1 \\ m \end{array}\right) = \alpha(m + 1) - 1
\]

\[
\nu_2\left(\begin{array}{c} 2m \\ m - 1 \end{array}\right) = \alpha(m - 1) + \alpha(m + 1) - \alpha(m)
\]

with

\[
\begin{array}{ll}
\nu_2\left(\begin{array}{c} 2m \\ m \end{array}\right) = \alpha(m) & \begin{cases} 1, & m = 2^a, \ a \geq 0, \\
\geq 2, & \text{otherwise}, \end{cases} \\
\nu_2\left(\begin{array}{c} 2m + 1 \\ m \end{array}\right) = \alpha(m + 1) - 1 & \begin{cases} 0, & m = 2^a - 1, \ a \geq 0, \\
1, & m = 2^a + 2^b - 1, \ 0 \leq a < b, \\
\geq 2, & \text{otherwise}, \end{cases} \\
\nu_2\left(\begin{array}{c} 2m \\ m - 1 \end{array}\right) = \alpha(m - 1) + \alpha(m + 1) - \alpha(m) & \begin{cases} 0, & m = 2^a - 1, \ a > 0, \\
1, & m = 2^a + 2^b - 1, \ 0 < a < b, \\
\geq 2, & \text{otherwise}. \end{cases}
\end{array}
\]
Theorem (3.3). We have that $\text{span}(X_{2t,2}) = k_{2t,2}$, in particular:

(a) If $n = 8m$, then $\text{span}(X_{n,2}) = n + 5$ for $m = 2^a - 1$, i.e. $n = 2^{a+3} - 8$ ($a > 0$). Also $\text{span}(X_{16,2}) = 23$.

(b) If $n = 8m + 2$, then $\text{span}(X_{n,2}) = n + 2$ for $m = 2^a$, i.e. $n = 2^{a+3} + 2$ ($a \geq 0$).

(c) If $n = 8m + 4$, then $\text{span}(X_{n,2}) = n + 1$ for $m = 2^a - 1$, i.e. $n = 2^{a+3} - 4$ ($a \geq 0$), and $\text{span}(X_{n,2}) = n + 2$ for $m = 2^a + 2^b - 1$, i.e. $n = 2^{a+3} + 2^{b+3} - 4$ ($0 \leq a < b$).

(d) If $n = 8m + 6$, then $\text{span}(X_{n,2}) = n - 1$ for $m = 2^a - 1$, i.e. $n = 2^{a+3} - 2$ ($a \geq 0$), and $\text{span}(X_{n,2}) = n + 3$ for $m = 2^a + 2^b - 1$, i.e. $n = 2^{a+3} + 2^{b+3} - 2$ ($0 \leq a < b$).

In addition, we have:

(e) For $m \geq 3$, $\text{span}(X_{2m-2,3}) = 2^{m+1} - 6$.

(f) For $m \geq 2$, $\text{span}(X_{2m+1,3}) = 2^{m+1} - 3$.

(g) For $m \geq 3$, $\text{span}(X_{2m-4,3}) = 3 \cdot 2^m - 10$.

Proof. The fact that $\text{span}(X_{2t,2}) = k_{2t,2}$ is an immediate consequence of Corollary (3.2), and (a)-(d) are then clear from Proposition (2.1) together with the above formulæ for binomial coefficients.

(e) and (g) From [21], Theorem 1.1; combined with [19], Theorem, p. 100; (note that for $X_{n,3}$ we could derive a result similar to Proposition (2.1), we obtain that $\text{span}(X_{2m-2,3}) \geq 2^{m+1} - 6 = k_{2m-2,3}$. In addition to this, $k_{2m-2,3}$ is an upper bound, too, because $w_{d-2m+1,6}(H_{2m-2,3}) = 2^{2m-6}$ does not vanish (note that now $N = 2^m - 4$). This proves (e); part (g) can be proved in an analogous way.

(f) Since $k_{2m+1,3} = 3 \cdot 2^m + 3 - 2^m - 6 = 2^{m+1} - 3$, we have (applying again [19], Theorem, p. 100) that $\text{span}(X_{2m+1,3}) \geq 2^{m+1} - 3$. Now $w_{d-2m+1,6}(X_{2m+1,3}) = 0$, so more delicate techniques are needed to show that $2^{m+1} - 3$ is also an upper bound for the span. Indeed, in this case both primary and secondary cohomology operations will be used.

We know (see e.g. [18]) that $\text{span}(X_{2m+1,3}) \geq 2^{m+1} - 2$ would imply the existence of a map $f : X_{2m+1,3} \rightarrow X_{3,2m+3,2m+1,4}$ such that $f^*(\xi) \approx \xi$. Hence, in cohomology, we would then have that $f^*(Y) = y$, where

$$H^*(X_{2m+1,3}; \mathbb{Z}_2) = \mathbb{Z}_2[\gamma]/(\gamma^{2m}) \otimes V(\gamma^{2m}, \gamma^{2m+1}, \gamma^{2m+2}, \ldots, \gamma^{2m+2})$$

and

$$H^*(X_{3,2m+3,2m+1,4}; \mathbb{Z}_2) = \mathbb{Z}_2[\gamma]/(\gamma^{2m}) \otimes V(Y_2^m, Y_2^{m+1}, Y_2^{m+2}, \ldots, Y_3^{2m+2})$$

Using the squaring operations as given in §1, the following are easily calculated and will be recorded here for future use in this proof.

(3.4) $sq^1(Y_2^m) = 0$, $sq^1(y^{2m}) = 0$.

(3.5) $sq^1(y^{2m+2}) = yy^{2m+2}$.

(3.6) $sq^2(y^{2m}) = y^2y^{2m}$.

(3.7) $sq^2(Y_2^{2m}) = 0$.

To now show that such a map $f$ cannot exist, we will use the Steenrod algebra $A_2$ and also the secondary Bockstein cohomology operation $\beta_2$ corresponding to the relation $sq^1 \cdot sq^1 = 0$. We know (see [11]) that, up to homotopy type, there
is a Serre fibration $\pi: X_{n,r} \to P^\infty$, with fibre the Stiefel manifold $V_{n,r}$. Let $i: V_{n,r} \to X_{n,r}$ be fibre inclusion; recall that $H^*(V_{n,r}; \mathbb{Z}_2) = V(x_{n-r}, \ldots, x_{n-1})$, and we have $i^*(y_j) = x_j$.

If $\xi$ is the Hopf line bundle over $P^\infty$, one has $\pi^*(\xi) \cong \xi$; if we write $H^*(P^\infty; \mathbb{Z}_2) = \mathbb{Z}_2[x]$ with $x = w_1(\xi)$, the equivalent of $\pi^*(\xi) \cong \xi$ is $\pi^*(x) = y$.

In the Serre spectral sequence of the fibration $\pi: X_{2m+1,3} \to P^\infty$, the element $x_{2m-1}$ is transgressive with $\tau(x_{2m-1}) = sq^1(x^{2m-1})$. It follows, by the third Peterson-Stein formula [28], Chap. 16, Theorem 3; and [4], that

$$i^*(\beta_2(\pi^*(x^{2m-1}))) = sq^1(x_{2m-1}) = x_{2m},$$

modulo indeterminacy $i^*(sq^1(H^{2m-1}(X_{2m+1,3}; \mathbb{Z}_2)))$. In $H^{2m-1}(X_{2m+1,3}; \mathbb{Z}_2)$ we take $\{y^{2m-1}, y^2y_{2m-2}\}$ as basis. Now $sq^1(y^{2m-1}) = y^{2m} = 0$, also (3.5) and the Cartan formula imply $sq^1(y \cdot y_{2m-2}) = y^2 \cdot y_{2m-2} + y \cdot y^2_{2m-2} = 0$. Hence the indeterminacy vanishes, and we have

$$(3.8) \quad i^*\beta_2(y^{2m-1}) = x_{2m}$$
as an “honest equation”.

Using the same reasoning in $X_{3,2m+1,3,2m+1,4}$, one finds similarly that

$$(3.9) \quad i^*\beta_2(Y^{2m-1}) = x_{2m},$$

again with zero indeterminacy.

It follows that $\beta_2(y^{2m-1}) = a \cdot y^2y_{2m-2} + b \cdot y_{2m}$, for some $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}_2$, and $\beta_2(Y^{2m-1}) = c \cdot Y_{2m}$, for some $c \in \mathbb{Z}_2$, both with zero indeterminacy. Noting that $i^*(y) = i^*\pi^*(x) = 0$, and using (3.8), the first equation gives

$$x_{2m} = i^*\beta_2(y^{2m-1}) = a \cdot i^*(y^2y_{2m-2}) + b \cdot i^*(y_{2m}) = 0 + b \cdot x_{2m},$$

and therefore $b = 1$. Similarly, using (3.9), one finds $c = 1$ and thus $\beta_2(Y^{2m-1}) = Y_{2m}$.

The naturality of $\beta_2$ is expressed by the equation

$$(3.10) \quad f^*(\beta_2(Y^{2m-1})) = \beta_2(f^*(Y^{2m-1})), $$

where the indeterminacy is

$$f^*sq^1(H^{2m-2}(X_{3,2m+1,3,2m+1,4}; \mathbb{Z}_2)) + sq^1(H^{2m-2}(X_{2m+1,3}; \mathbb{Z}_2)) = 0,$$
as we have seen above. It follows that

$$f^*(Y_{2m}) = f^*(\beta_2(Y^{2m-1})) = \beta_2(f^*(Y^{2m-1})) = \beta_2(y^{2m-1}) = a \cdot y^2y_{2m-2} + y_{2m}.$$We show that $a = 0$. Indeed, we have $0 = f^*(0) = f^*(sq^1(Y_{2m})) = sq^1(f^*(Y_{2m})) = sq^1(y_{2m}) + a \cdot sq^2(y^2y_{2m-2}) = a \cdot y^3y_{2m-2}$, the last equality following from (3.4), (3.5) and the Cartan formula, and thus $a = 0$.

So we have shown

$$f^*(Y_{2m}) = y_{2m}.$$But this implies, using (3.6), that $sq^2(f^*(Y_{2m})) = sq^2(y_{2m}) = y^2y_{2m+1}$ does not vanish. On the other hand, using (3.7), the same element $f^*(sq^2(Y_{2m})) = f^*(0)$ vanishes. Of course, this is a contradiction, and we have shown that $\text{span}(X_{2m+1,3}) \leq 2^{m+1} - 3$ for $m \geq 2$. The proof of part (f), and of the whole Theorem (3.3), is complete. □
We remark that the same techniques used above to compute the secondary Bockstein operation can be used to compute any secondary cohomology operation \( \Phi \) of degree \( t \) on \( x^{N-t}, \ x \in H^1(X_{n,r}; \mathbb{Z}_2) \), assuming of course \( x^{N-t} \) is in the domain of \( \Phi \).

4. Inequalities for the span and some conjectures

A useful piece of information on the span of projective Stiefel manifolds is also the following.

**Theorem (4.1).** One has \( \text{span}(X_{n,r+1}) \geq \text{span}(X_{n,r}) \), and, for \( s \geq 2 \),

\[
\text{span}(X_{n,r+s}) \geq \text{span}^0(X_{n,r}) + \left( \frac{s}{2} \right).
\]

**Proof.** The first assertion is an immediate consequence of the existence of a smooth fibration \( p: X_{n,r+1} \to X_{n,r} \). For the second, using the notation of [19], note that vector bundle isomorphisms \( \tau_{n,r+1} \approx p^*\tau_{n,r} \oplus \beta'_{n,r+1} \) (iii) in [19], p. 98 and \( p^*\beta'_{n,r} \approx \beta'_{n,r+1} \oplus e \) (ii in [19], p. 98) describe the effect of the pull-back \( p^* \) on the tangent bundle \( \tau_{n,r} \) and on the twisted orthogonal complement bundle \( \beta'_{n,r} \approx \beta_{n,r} \otimes \xi_{n,r} \) (\( \beta_{n,r} \) is described in §1). Iterating these isomorphisms \( s \) times, one easily establishes inductively, for the fibration \( q: X_{n,r+s} \to X_{n,r} \), that

\[
\tau_{n,r+s} \approx q^*(\tau_{n,r}) \oplus \left( \frac{s}{2} \right)e \oplus s\beta'_{n,r+s}.
\]

If \( s \geq 2 \) then the right hand side can be rewritten

\[
q^*(\tau_{n,r} \oplus e) \oplus \left( \frac{s}{2} - 1 \right)e \oplus s\beta'_{n,r+s},
\]

which has span at least as great as \( \text{span}^0(X_{n,r}) + 1 + \left( \frac{s}{2} - 1 \right) = \text{span}^0(X_{n,r}) + \left( \frac{s}{2} \right) \), completing the proof.

By saying that \( r \) is in the lower range of \( n \) we roughly mean that \( r < n/2 \); see [7] for precise information on the lower range. Based on the results of this paper, [17], and other predecessors we make the following conjectures.

**Conjectures (4.2).**

(A) \( \text{span}(X_{n,r}) \geq k_{n,r} \).

(B) \( \text{span}(X_{n,r}) = \text{span}^0(X_{n,r}) \).

(C) In the lower range, \( \text{span}(X_{n,r}) = k_{n,r} \).

**Remarks (4.3).**

(1) Conjecture (4.2)(A) is proved in [19] for all \( n, r \) except \( n \) odd, \( r = 2 \).

(2) Conjecture (4.2)(B) implies Conjecture (4.2)(A), and (B) is proved for roughly 70% of all \( (n, r) \) pairs using the results in [20], Ch. 20; see also [18], [19].

(3) Conjecture (4.2)(C) is supported by various results in the present paper, especially Corollary (3.2) and Theorem (3.3), and all other calculations to date. For \( n \leq 18 \) a small number of exceptions can and do occur, because the product \( rn \) can be divisible by \( \phi(n-1) \) when \( n \leq 18 \); here as usual \( \phi(n) \) is the number of integers \( j \) satisfying \( 1 \leq j \leq n \) and \( j \equiv 0, 1, 2, 4 \pmod{8} \). In the upper range, it is usually the case that \( \text{span}(X_{n,r}) > k_{n,r} \).
(4) All Conjectures (4.2)(A),(B),(C), are true when $r = 1$. This is trivial for (A), (C). For (B), when $n$ is odd, it follows because the Euler characteristic $\chi(X_{n,1}) = \chi(\mathbb{R}P^{n-1}) = 1$ is odd. For $n$ even it is proved in [14].

5. Appendix, Hurwitz-Radon Multiplications

In this appendix a construction of the Hurwitz-Radon multiplications

$$F: \mathbb{R}^r \otimes \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^n, \quad r = \rho(n),$$

is briefly outlined. As in §1, we write $n = (2a + 1)2^d, a, d \geq 0, 0 \leq c \leq 3$, and $\rho(n) = 2^c + 8d$. The method is that of Lam and Yiu [24], [23], uses Cayley-Dickson algebras (cf. Moreno [27]), and could be considered a shorter and more elegant version of [37]. The facts essential to the proof of Theorem (2.3) will also be established. These multiplications all have the norm-preserving property $\| F(u \otimes v) \| = \| u \| \cdot \| v \|$. For details of the construction of the Cayley-Dickson algebra $\mathbb{A}_n$, of real dimension $2^n$, we refer to [27]. To commence it suffices to recall that $\mathbb{A}_0 = \mathbb{R}, \mathbb{A}_1 = \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{A}_2 = \mathbb{H}, \mathbb{A}_3 = \mathbb{O}$ (respectively the reals, complex numbers, quaternions, and octonions), well known algebras with norm-preserving multiplications. The sedenions $\mathbb{A}_4$ will be discussed and applied in the following paragraph. The algebras $\mathbb{A}_i, 0 \leq i \leq 3$, with multiplication denoted $\cdot$, suffice to construct the Hurwitz-Radon multiplications for the case $d = 0, i.e. \ n = (2a + 1)2^c, 0 \leq c \leq 3$ (note that then $r = \rho(n) = 2^c$) by means of the composition

$$\mathbb{R}^r \otimes \mathbb{R}^n = (\mathbb{R}^r \otimes \mathbb{R}^{2a+1}) \approx (\mathbb{R}^r \otimes \mathbb{R}^r) \otimes \mathbb{R}^{2a+1} \xrightarrow{F \otimes id} \mathbb{R}^r \otimes \mathbb{R}^{2a+1} = \mathbb{R}^n.$$  

The corresponding orthogonal transformations $\phi_0, \phi_1, \ldots, \phi_{r-1}$ (defined in §2) are well known to satisfy properties P(i), P(ii) stated in §2. They are also clearly given by signed permutation matrices with an equal number of plus and minus signs (apart from $\phi_0 = I_n$), since this is true for the multiplication $F$ in $\mathbb{A}_i$. In addition, for $1 \leq i < j \leq r - 1$ let us write $\upsilon = (x_1, \ldots, x_n) \in \mathbb{R}_n$, and $\phi_i(\upsilon) = (\pm x_{\sigma(i)}, \ldots, \pm x_{\sigma(n)})$, $\phi_j(\upsilon) = (\pm x_{\tau(1)}, \ldots, \pm x_{\tau(n)})$ for some permutations $\sigma, \tau$, and some choice of signs. Since $\phi_i(\upsilon) \perp \phi_j(\upsilon)$, it is clear that $\sigma(k) \neq \tau(k), 1 \leq k \leq n$, giving (by taking $k = 1$) property P(iii). This completes the case $d = 0$.

The Lam-Yiu construction, for $d > 0$, gives an inductive procedure such that replacing $n$ by $16n$ will increase $r$ to $r + 8$, this being precisely what the Hurwitz-Radon formula asserts. To this end we turn to the sedenions $\mathbb{A}_4$. According to the Cayley-Dickson construction they consist of ordered pairs $(u, v)$, where $u, v \in \mathbb{O}$, added coordinate-wise and multiplied by the rule $(u, v)(x, y) = (ux - vy, yu + vx)$. Unlike the norm-preserving multiplications in $\mathbb{A}_j, j = 0, 1, 2, 3$, $\mathbb{A}_4$ has divisors of zero. However, restricting the multiplication of $\mathbb{A}_4$ to $\mathbb{R}^9 \otimes \mathbb{R}^{16} \to \mathbb{R}^{16}$, where $\mathbb{R}^9 = \mathbb{R}^{\sigma(16)}$ is taken to be the subspace

$$\{(a_0, a_1, a_2, a_3, a_4, a_5, a_6, a_7, a_8, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0); a_i \in \mathbb{R}, i = 0, \ldots, 8\},$$

it is easy to show that this restricted multiplication is norm-preserving. We denote it $\Phi$, and it can also be found written in tabular form in [13], p. 4. Taking the standard basis $e_0, e_1, \ldots, e_8$ for $\mathbb{R}^9$, one defines orthogonal transformations $\gamma_i \in O(16), 0 \leq i \leq 8$, by $\gamma_i(\upsilon) = \Phi(e_i \otimes \upsilon)$. As usual $\gamma_0 = I$, and for
1 \leq i, j \leq 8, \ \gamma_i \text{ is skew symmetric, } \gamma_i^2 = -I, \text{ and } \gamma_i \gamma_j + \gamma_j \gamma_i = 0, \ i \neq j, \text{ it is also standard that these properties are equivalent to the multiplication being norm-preserving. In addition it is clear, using the definition or the table in [13], that each } \gamma_i, \ i > 0, \text{ is a signed permutation matrix with an equal number of plus and minus signs.}

To effect the Lam-Yiu construction, one also defines \( \Gamma = \gamma_1 \cdots \gamma_8 \). One can easily verify that \( \Gamma \) is symmetric, \( \Gamma^2 = I \), and for \( i > 0 \) one has \( \Gamma \gamma_i + \gamma_i \Gamma = 0 \).

Being a product of signed permutation matrices it must also be a signed permutation matrix, indeed, it is easy to check that for \( x = (x_1, \ldots, x_{16}) \),

\[
\Gamma(x) = (-x_9, x_{10}, x_{11}, \ldots, x_{16}, -x_1, x_2, x_3, \ldots, x_8).
\]

Now suppose one has a norm-preserving multiplication \( F: \mathbb{R}^r \otimes \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^n \), then just as for \( \Phi \) one defines \( r = \rho(n)+8 \) orthogonal transformations \( \theta_0, \ldots, \theta_{r-1} \in O(n) \). As in §2 (just before P(i)-P(iii)), we may suppose that \( \theta_0 = I \). Then the remaining \( \theta_i, \ 1 \leq i \leq r-1 \), are skew symmetric and satisfy the same identities as the \( \gamma_i \) above. In addition, we assume (inductively) that they are signed permutation matrices. Then we construct a norm-preserving multiplication \( G: \mathbb{R}^{\rho(n)+8} \otimes \mathbb{R}^{16n} \to \mathbb{R}^{16n} \approx \mathbb{R}^n \otimes \mathbb{R}^{16} \) by defining the corresponding \( \rho(n)+8 = \rho(16n) \) orthogonal transformations in \( O(16n) \) as

\[
\phi_0 = I, \ \phi_1 = \theta_1 \otimes \Gamma, \ \ldots, \ \phi_{\rho(n)-1} = \theta_{\rho(n)-1} \otimes \Gamma,
\]

\[
\phi_{\rho(n)} = I \otimes \gamma_1, \ \ldots, \ \phi_{\rho(n)+7} = I \otimes \gamma_8.
\]

One easily checks that the \( \phi_i \) satisfy the same identities as the \( \gamma_i, \ \theta_i \), and hence define a norm-preserving multiplication on \( \mathbb{R}^{16n} \). Furthermore, the tensor product of signed permutation matrices is obviously again a signed permutation matrix. Starting from the already completed case \( d = 0 \), this construction inductively produces the Hurwitz-Radon multiplications, as a family of skew symmetric signed permutation matrices (and the first being \( I \)). This establishes properties P(i), P(ii) used in the proof of Theorem (2.3), and an argument similar to that used above in the \( d = 0 \) case, also gives property P(iii).

The fact established above, that the Hurwitz-Radon multiplications are given by signed permutation matrices, is also of interest in the combinatorial study of Hadamard matrices. Although this fact is likely known, perhaps even since the time of Hurwitz and Radon, to the best of the authors’ knowledge it (or its proof) does not appear in the literature.

**Acknowledgments**

The authors thank the referees for their helpful comments leading to an improved presentation. Part of this research was carried out while J. Korbaš was a member of two research teams supported in part by the grant agency VEGA and a member of two bilateral (Slovak-Czech 0081-07 and Slovak-Slovenian 0005-08) teams supported in part by the grant agency APVV.

*Received November 3, 2008*

*Final version received March 21, 2009*
REFERENCES


